

James Burney - Journey on HMS Discovery, 10 Feb. 1776 - 24 Aug. 1779
Safe 1 / 64; Safe 1 / 79

Journal of the proceedings of his Maj'ys. Sloop, the Discovery - Chas. Clerke, Commander -
in Company with the Resolution - Capt. James Cook - Feb'ry. 10th. 1776 to October 11th. 1777.
Jas. Burney.

[Vol.1 - page 2]

Longitude in, is reckoned from Greenwich -

[Vol.1 - page 3]

1776

February 10th. His Maj'ys. Ships The Resolution and The Discovery were put in Commission at Deptford.
Captains James Cook, and Chas. Clerke beng appointed to command them.

May 12th. being rigged, Stores, provisions &c on board, The Discovery fell down to the Galleons where we
took our Guns in. 8 four pounders & 8 Swivels.

June 15th. Sailed out of the River in company with the Resolution whom we left at the Nore and proceeded
down Channel.

26th. Anchor'd in Plymouth Sound, and Saluted Admr. Amherst with 13 Guns.

30th. The Resolution Capt. Cook, came into the Sound and remained till the 12th of July when she departed
for the Cape of Good Hope.

July 22nd. Our Ships Company received all their pay up to the end of June, besides 2 Months advance. an
indulgence granted by the Admiralty to enable them to buy necessaries for a long Voyage.

August 1st. Capt. Clerke came down to the Ship. at 1 after Noon Sailed out of Plymouth Sound with a SE
Wind.

7th. Passed by Cape Finistere

[Vol. 1 - page 4]

1776

August from England

Friday 9th. Spoke the Diana Snow from Lisbon bound to London -
served fishing lines, hooks &c. to the Ships Company

Tuesday 13th. Saw the Is. of Porto Sancto and next day Madeira, both which we kept to the Westward of.

Sunday 18th. it being intended to stop no where in our passage to the Cape of Good Hope went to a daily
allowance of 2 Quarts of Water exclusive of what was used for cooking - and in Moderate Weather set the
Still at Work which generally gave us about 10 Gallons in an Afternoon.

26th. 27th. 28th. passed within sight of Cape Verde Islands.

September 17th. Crossed the Equator in 15 degrees West Long'de. from Greenwich. from 10th No. Latitude
had SW Winds till we approachd the Eq. Line when it gradually veered round to the SE. at this time of the
Year SW Winds most prevail near the Coast of Africa.

Friday 20th. found the Starboard Main Trussel tree Sprung. Bolted and Woulded the Weak part and got the
Main Toprope on the Trussel tree to support it against the Strain of the Topmast & Rigging.

Tuesday 24th. This Afternoon the Corporal of Marines, Geo Harrison, unfortunately fell overboard and was
drowned.

October 31st. Saw the Land 25 Leagues to the Northward of Table Bay. A fresh Gale from the SE prevented our getting in till the 10th of November when

[Vol 1 - page 5]

November Table Bay, Cape of Good Hope -

we Anchor'd in the Bay and Joined the Resolution who had arrived 3 Weeks before -

Bearings when Moor'd.

[Lyon's Tail NNW½W

[Church SWbW½W

[Penguin Island N½W

Bt. Br. to the NNE in 5½ fms.

Saluted the Dutch Garrison with 13 Guns which they returned.

We remained here 3 Weeks in which time we stripped the Main mast and repaired the Trussel tree Sprung at Sea. Caulk'd our Decks and Sides which had been very leaky during the latter part of the passage, repaired our Rigging, Sails &c and increased our Stocks of provisions, having when we left the Cape upwards of 2 Years compleat in every Species, at full allowance, Bread excepted - and of that very little short.

Enter'd a Seaman here, being by the loss of the Corporal of Marines one Short of our Complement.

Saturday 30th. having finished our business (here), the people well refreshed and in good health, this Afternoon Sailed out of Table Bay in company with the Resolution who Saluted the Garrison.

The Wind failing were obliged to Anchor off penguin Island, it bearing NW to WbS distant 2 miles. depth of water 8 fathoms. next morning at Daylight got under Sail again and on the evening of the 2nd of December took our departure from the Cape of Good Hope.

Every body at 2/3rds. allowance of Bread -

[Vol. 1 - page 6]

1776

December Marion's Islands

We directed our Course to the SE having almost continual fair Winds and foul Weather.

Thursday 5th. The Resolution carried away her Mizzen Topmost and did not get another up till 3 days after.

Thursday 12th. at Noon. Latde.46.½ 20' So. Longte. 37½. 10' Et.

at 1 Afternoon Saw Land which proved to be the 2 Westermost of the Islands discovered by Marion - bearing South and SSE æ Et. -

They lay from each other NE ½ E and SW ½ W pr Compass distance about 6 Leagues. The Northermost is about 8 and the Southermost 12 miles in length, we ran between them keeping within 5 or 6 miles of the Southern Island which at that distance afforded a tolerable good prospect in spite of the gloominess of the weather, having many green spots but nothing like Trees that we could discern. Near the North end of this Island is a remarkable Rock. The South part terminates in a long low point. Saw no appearance of a Harbour or Bay.

Their Latitude is from 46..30 to 47..04 So.

Long'te. of the SWestermost 37..30 Et. @ Greenw'ch. Var'tn. 29½ West

At Night lost sight of these Islands and Steered more to the Eastward for the Land discovered by Kerguelin.

In this run we were in continual fear of the 2 Ships parting company, the Fogs being so thick

[Vol. 1 - page 7]

Dec'br. To Kerguelen's Land.

that frequently for many hours together we have not been able to see twice the length of the Ship - scarce a day passed with losing sight of each other. in these situations we kept company by sound; firing guns every hour, sometimes oftener, and guessing from the report the place of the other Ship. A Stout Jacket and pair of Trowsers was served out to every man in the Ship, (being a present from Government) to enable them to stand the continual wet weather we now met with.

Tuesday 24th. at 6 this morning saw the Land SSE 2 or 3 Leagues distant, having these last 3 or 4 days sailed in a Zigzag Course as the best Chance of finding it. Wind Westerly.

By 7 past were close in with the Land, which we found to be a Groupe of small Islands and Rocks. at 8 being very hazy and blowing fresh stood off to the Northward. 2 or 3 Leagues to the NNE of these Islands is a small high Rock, the Northernmost Land we saw. Its Lat'de 48..27 So.

At 11 past The Weather becoming moderate, Tack'd and stood to the Southward.

At Noon Lat'de. Ober'd. 40..24 So.

ran by the East side and within a mile of the North Rock; at 2 past saw more Land to the Southward which appeared to be of considerable extent. Set all our Sails to get well in before [dark]

[Vol 1. - page 8]

1776

December Kerguelens's Land

24th. dark. at 4 were near the North End but seeing no good Anchoring place, Bore away for the East Side and by 5 got under the Lee of the Land where we found a good Harbour about 2 miles from the Northernmost point. The Resolution made the Anchoring Signal, and at 8 both Ships came too in the outer part of the Harbour. We in 28 fathoms Sandy bottom, near the South Shore. The 2 points of the Harbour bearing NBE and SSE½E.

The Resolution farther out in 40 fathoms.

Captn. Cook sent a boat to examine the upper part of the Harbour which soon after returned with an account of good Anchorage & fresh Water - in the Night had a light breeze from the NW.

Wednesday 25th. at 4 in the Morning found our Anchor came home. there being no Tide, very little Wind, and Smooth Water, The Ship before any thing of the kind was suspected, drove so near the Rocks that we were obliged to make Sail with the Anchor on the Ground and 50 fathoms of Cable out. By setting all our Head Sails, we luckily dragged the Anchor out into deeper Water, which had it not followed easily, must have been cut away; having not more than room enough to clear the South point of the Harbour. found one palm broke off; as we had Rode with scarce any Strain all Night,

[Vol. 1 - page 9]

Christmas Harbour

Lat'de. 40½..42 So. The South Point

Long'de. 69..00 Et. @ Greenw'ch

Variation 30½ Westerly

[Map of Christmas Harbour]

[Vol. 1 - page 10]

December

1776

Kerguelen's Land.

Christmas Harbour

James Burney - Journey on HMS Discovery, 10 Feb. 1776 - 24 Aug. 1779

Safe 1/64; Safe 1/79

Mitchell Library, State Library of NSW

25th. this was judged owing to bad workmanship - in heaving the Anchor up we drifted out of the Harbour; in the mean time the Resolution weigh'd and work'd into the upper part where we joined her in the afternoon , and Moored the Ship.

On Account of the day Captn. Cook named this Christmas Harbour - at the entrance on the South point is a Rock remarkable for a large Arch through it.

Bearings when Moor'd.

Outer points of the Harbour SEÿS and ESEæE

Points within - on the North Side Eÿ S on the South Side SBE

Upper part of the Harbour - NW B W 1 mile

Bt. Br. up the Harbour in 12 fath'ns muddy bottom

The Dead Reckoning from the Cape of Good Hope is above 4 degrees short of the Time Keeper and Lunar Observations.

The Tide rises and falls 4 feet perpendicular, but the number of little rivulets and (springs) Falls from the Hills, particularly in wet weather makes a continual drain or slow current setting out of the Harbour. High Water 9^o Hours after the Moon passes the Meridian.

The Land hereabouts is high and mountainous and has the most forlorn and desolate appearance imaginable, being a continued lump of Rock without Tree or Bush - what little soil there is, is too rotten to bear a man's weight

[Vol. 1 - page 11]

1776

December Christmas Harbour - Kerguelen's Land

weight. in this Latitude the Weather in Summer has been found almost always wet and foggy. The natural dreariness of the place is not a little increased by the melancholy croakings of innumerable Penguins with which the Shore is lined. Nature seems to have designed this spot solely for the use of Sea Lions, Seals, Penguins and Sea Fowls; there are a few wild Duck but small and fishy. We haul'd the Sean and tried with hooks, but caught not a single Fish.

We compleated our Water here and got a quantity of Blubber for making Lamp Oil.

26th. A Bottle was found on Shore in which was a paper with the French King's Titles LUD.XV. &c. in Latin - date 1772. neither Ship or Captains Name.

[Vol. 1 - page 12]

[Botanical illustration]

This which grows on the Rocks is the only vegetable except Moss that we saw in Kerguelen's Land -

[Vol. 1 - page 13]

Chart - Coast of Kerguelen's Land.

[Vol. 1 - page 14]

December

1776 Kerguelen's Land - from Christmas Harbour

Sunday 29th. Wind NW with fair Weather. at 7 in the Morning Weigh'd and came to Sail. having got out Steered alongshore to the SE. in the first 6 miles ran by 3 fine Harbours, each of which appeared better shelter'd than the one we came from.

A League and a half distant from Christmas Harb'r. to the SE, are 4 Small low Islands, Rocks & Breakers off the No. End. We Sail'd within these, 3 larger Islands farther out. This forenoon passed several deep Bays, the Land High and Craggy -
Lat'de. at Noon 40 \ddot{y} .40" So.

between 12 and 1 running within same small Islands that lay half a League from the Main, got entangled amongst a great quantity of Sea Weed that grew from the Bottom and almost Stopped the Ships way - depth of Water 19 fathoms. Seeing Breakers ahead and more Sea Weed, haul'd off Shore - more breakers without us.

At \circ past 2 Wore Round. Spoke the Resolution and were ordered to make Sail in Shore and look for a Harbour, there being an appearance of one to the WSW at about 3 Leagues distant. at 4 passed a small low Island {to the North of it} which we gave a good birth on account of a large bed of Sea Weed that ran off it. made the Signal for a Harbour which Captn. Cook answered by making the Signal to Anchor.

[Vol. 1 - page 15]

1776

December

Kerguelen's Land

29th. at 6 Anchor'd in 16 fms muddy bottom, in the North part of a large Bay well Sheltered without by Islands and Beds of Sea Weed - foul ground and breakers to the South of us.

Bearings -

No. point of the Harbour NE

So. point {over the inner end of a long Island}, SBE

a Cluster of Small Islands S \ddot{y} E to E \ddot{a} S the nearest 1 mile dist.

Lat'de. 49..01 So. Distant from Christmas Harbour 9 Leag's.

Captain Cook names this Port Pallisser

Monday 30th. At Daylight got under Sail. Wind NW. - ran out of the Harbour the same way we enter'd it, being frequently obliged to alter our Course on account of the Rock Weed.

All the forenoon running to the Eastward keeping a good distance off Shore - having run 10 Leagues found the Coast, which is here low and level, turn off to the Southward - on the No. part of the Low Land is a remarkable Hummock. at Noon Lat'de. Observed 49..01 So. in the Afternoon stood to the Southward alongshore with a fresh breeze. A Chain of high Snowy Mountains at the back of the Low Land -

At \ddot{y} past 6 The Southermost point of Land in sight bore WbS per Compass, whence the Coast seems to turn short round to the Westward - at 7 the Weather becoming hazy, Bore away and left the Land -

[Vol. 1 - page 16]

1777

January

To Van Demen's Land -

The Winds continuing favourable got the the E'tward at a great rate - thick foggy weather -

5th. about midnight lost sight of the Resolution and though we kept firing Guns every hour, heard no answer till 9 next morning from which time we steered by the report of her Guns and at 2 in the Afternoon it clearing up, saw her again. We were all this time Sailing at the rate of 4 miles an hour with a fair Wind.

The 2 Ships are exceedingly well pair'd as Company Keepers being nearly equal in their Sailing - the little difference is in favour of the Discovery.

Sunday 19th. at 4 in the Morning the Resolution carried away her Foretopmast and Maintopgallant Mast - till 8 an Night went under an easy Sail, by which time they had got up another Topmast and Topgallant Mast and the Sails set.

Monday 20th. Saw 2 Seals and past a quantity of Rock Weed. Lat'd. at Noon 43..40 So.
Long'de. 137 Et.

22nd. Seals and Sea Lions

Friday 24th. at 3 in the Morning saw the SW Cape of Van demen's Land bearing NjW
4 Leagues - ran along shore to the Eastward at the distance of 3 or 4 Leagues - having a light Southerly
Wind till Evening when we were abreast Storm Bay -

[Vol.1 - page 17]

1777

January Van Demen's Land -

24th. in the Night had light airs from the NE. Saw fires on shore -

little wind and Calms all the next day and Night , that we scarce got any ground -

Sunday 26th. having a breeze from the SSE both Ships in the Afternoon Anchor'd in Adventure or Frederic
Henry's Bay and Moor'd

Saw the Smoke of several fires, not far distant, in the Woods on the West Side of the Bay

Monday 27th. Wooding and Watering - a party of Marines from each Ship to protect the Woodcutters. in the
afternoon some Brandy was sent as a refreshment for the people on Shore, but through the carelessness of
those who should have seen it distributed in proper quantities, 5 of our Marines who were part of the Guard,
got possession of it, and made themselves beastly drunk, that they were put motionless in the Boat, and
when brought on board, obliged to be hoisted into the Ship - for this offence they were severely punished
next morning

28th. The working Cables which had hitherto been kept between decks, were coil'd down the Main Hold and
6 Tons of Cask stowed in their Stead, which besides occupying less space are easily moved to clean under.

[Vol.1 - page 18]

[Chart] Adventure or Frederic Henry Bay

[Notes]

This Bay is sheltered by Maria's Islands from NE Winds

The dotted parts are Sandy Beaches

The Tide rises between 3 and 4 feet perpendicular -

High Water 6 Hours after the Moon passes the Meridian -

The Current or Set of the Tide is scarcely perceptible, the Ship always tending to the Wind

Lat'de. of Penguin Island 43y..20' So.

Long'de. from Greenwich 147..45 Et.

Var'tn. 7.36 Et.

[Vol.1 - page 19]

1777

January Van demen's Land -

28th. This Afternoon some of the Natives came down on the beach and were met by Captain Cook. They
were quite inoffensive and soon became very familiar. They had no Arms and seemed not in the least
apprehensive or suspicious.

Haul'd the Sean ashore and caught Fish enough to serve every body -

Wednesday 29th. Many of the Natives came to the Wooding place and were presented with Knives, Beads &c. with which they were much pleased. They are great talkers and their Language is neither harsh nor indistinct - few people may more truly be said to be in a state of Nature; both Sexes go quite naked, 2 or 3 Old Women had part of some Animals Skin tied round their Neck which just hung down to their breasts, but this was probably more for ornament than covering. They are of the Negroe kind, Woolly headed and flat nosed, of middling stature and not ill featured - in the most Natural Actions they are without restraint, and have much less idea of decency than and English Dog, who will lift his Leg up by which you may guess what he is going about, but one these Gentlemen, whether sitting, walking or talking, will pour forth his stream without any preparatory Action or Guidance, or even appearing sensible of what he is doing, and not in the least interested whether it trickles down his own Thighs or Sprinkles the persons next him -

Some had their Beards divided into seperate locks, each rolled

[Vol.1 - page 20]

1777

January Van Demens Land -

up with a small lump of red oker and clay. The first evening of our being favoured with their company Captn. Cook gave them some Fish which were found the next day left in the same place where they had been given, nor would they eat any thing we gave them - We saw no Canoes and they appeared averse to being on the Water. 2 of them came into our Boat, but were very awkward and unable to steady themselves and glad to get on shore again -

A possown was shot here, an Animal common enough in North America, and among the Natives we saw the Skin of a Beast they call Kongura, which has been seen on the East Coast of New Holland in the Endeavour's Voyage. Birds here are very shy which argues the Inhabitants to have methods of catching them - they have Snares for Animals made of a Strong Grass - Here are many Snakes and such a number of troublesome, vexatious insects as make it uncomfortable being on Shore.

We cut some Spars and the Resolution got a Stick for a Spare Topmast, the Trees being strong tough and perfectly strait of all sizes, and in generally shoot up a great height before they branch out.

had plenty of Fish during our Stay, and a good deal of Hay was cut for the Horses, Horned Cattle, and other Stock on board the Resolution -

[Vol.1 - page 21]

[Chart] Van demens Land

[Notes]

Here the Adventure left the Coast
Land in sight to qt. NNW

Cape Barren
Var'tn. 8y..' Et.

Adventure Bay
Maria's Islands
Var'tn. 8..40 Et.

[Vol.1 - page 22]

1777

Jan'y. Feb'ry. To New Zealand Charlotte Sound

Jan'y. 30th. This morning hove up our Anchors and Sailed out of Adventure Bay. in the afternoon passed to the South of Maria's Islands and after Sunset lost sight of the Land - steering a direct Course towards Charlotte Sound, New Zealand -

February

Tuesday 4th. in the Night Geo. Moody, Marine, fell overboard and was drown'd

Monday 10th. in the Afternoon made the Coast of New Zealand between Rocks point and Cape Farewell. from Van demens Land have had very fine Weather.

Wednesd. 12th. at day light ran into Charlotte Sound and by Noon were birth'd in Ship Cove, having narrowly escaped being ashore, the Ship missing Stays under Topsails -

Bearings when Moor'd

Bt. Br.[Best Bower] to the SSW in 9 fms mudd

No. point of Ship Cove NE to N

Watering place - SWbWÿW æ of a mile distant

The Hippa Island - East

Point Jackson {the NW point of the Sound} is in

40.58 So. Latitude and 174ÿ East Longitude -

Var'tn. of the Compass 13..35 Et.

High Water 9 Hours after the Moon passes the Meridian - perpendicular height of the Tide between 6 and 7 feet -

[Vol.1. - page 23]

1777

February - Charlotte Sound, New Zealand -

Thursday 13th. The Tents of both Ships were erected at the Watering place and the Coopers, Waterers, Sailmakers &c with a party of Marines from each Ship sent to remain on the Shore under the direction of Lieut't. King of the Resolution -

The Astronomers Tents were likewise pitched at the Watering Place and the whole made a formidable appearance. Next day the Horses were got on Shore.

A great many Indians from different parts of the Sound have come and taken up their abode in Ship Cove - Fish plenty -

Employed Wooding, Watering, Brewing Spruce Beer, Boiling down the Blubber got at Kerguelen's Land, Haymaking, repairing Rigging, Sails &c. &c.

The Gardens made here last Voyage were so overrun with Weeds and Under Wood that we could scarce distinguish the remains. A few Cabbages were found and some Onion Seed that had run wild. The potatoe Garden on the Motuara was not look'd after

Sunday 16th. at Day light the 2 Captains with a large party went up the Sound to cut Gass and at Night returned with 2 Launch Loads. in this excursion they visited Grass Cove. The place where the Adventure's Cutter was attacked.

[Vol.1. - page 24]

Charlotte Sound

New Zealand

Of this Accident the best account I have been able to collect, is, that our people were dining on the beach. during their Meal, a Zealander stole something out of the Boat and was making off with it, which being unluckily perceived by Mr. Rowe, he fired and killed the Thief on the Spot. The Zealanders immediately sallied out of the Woods and got between our people and the Boat. They say Rowe fired twice and killed

another man, but the peoples Muskets had been left in the Boat, nobody except himself having any Fire Arms, so that they were easily overpowered. and fell from imagining themselves too secure.

The Adventure's Cutter was soon after taken from the New Zealanders of Charlotte Sound by those of Terrawitte {The North Side of Cooks Straits} a Strong party of whom had come over on a Visit.

The Indians who are about us, are in parties or Tribes seemingly unconnected with each other and live in different parts of Ship Cove. One of these parties are accused by the rest of being the people who cutt off the Adventure's Boat. Their Chief whose Name is How-ura they say killed Rowe. on the Beach where this party lives were 2 Canoes that had been cut to pieces and rebuilt and it was remarked that neither of these Canoes came alongside the Ships.

A little before our Arrival the Inhabitants of Charlotte Sound had been surprised and 50 of them destroyed by the people of Admiralty Bay

[Vol.1 - page 25]

1777

February

Charlotte Sound

New Zealand -

Thursday 20th. had a Gale of Wind from the Westward attended with hard Squalls, in one of which our Small Bower Anchor having got foul, came home and we drove alongside the Resolution but luckily got clear without hurt and Moor'd the Ship again.

In Ship Cove and other parts on the West Side of the Sound the height and unevenness of the Land when the Wind is Westerly occasions violent flurries from every quarter of the Compass -

A Young Zealander whose name is Tibarua, has lived on board the Resolution lately and says he will go to Otaheite.

Sunday 23rd. Struck the Tents and got everything on board -

Monday 24th. Weighed and ran out of Ship Cove into the outer part of the Sound where we Anchor'd in 9 fathoms muddy bottom.

Point Jackson bearing North
Cape Koamaroo E½S
and the Hippa Island SBW½W

The New Zealanders of Charlotte Sound were never so much amongst us as this time. The reason probably because they found more was to be got and on easier terms than ever before, for our folk were all so eager after curiosities and withall so much better provided in any other Voyage, that Traffick was greatly altered in favour of the Indians, a Nail the last Voyage purchasing more than an Axe or Hatchet now. before our departure, Hatchets were slung under their Cloaths instead of Patows -

They often appeared to have great Friendship for us, speaking sometimes in the most compassionate tone of [Voice]

[Vol.1 - page 26]

Charlotte Sound

Voice imaginable - but it not a little disgusted one to find all this Show of fondness interested and that it constantly ended in begging. if gratified with their first demand they would immediately fancy something else, their expectations and importunities increasing in proportion as they had been indulged - We had instances of their quarelling after having begged 3 things, because a fourth was denied them - it seemed evident that many of them held us in great contempt and I believe chiefly on account of our not revenging the Affair of Grass Cove, so contrary to the principle by which they would have been actuated in the like Case. another Cause might be their getting from us so many valuable things for which they gave the credit solely to their superior Cunning - as an instance how much they trusted to our easiness one man did not scruple to acknowledge his being present and assisting at the killing and eating the Adventures people -

No Beast can be more ravenous or greedy than a New Zealander. nothing comes amiss; but no victuals was so highly relished by them as the rank Seal Blubber we brought from Kerguelens Land and which we boiled down here. so fond were they of this delicious food that some of our people who attended the Boiling have for the Skimming procured very substantial favour with the Ladies -

[Vol.1 - page 27]

1777

February from New Zealand -

Tuesday 25th. Wind NW at 9 in the forenoon hove up our Anchor and left Charlotte Sound - in the Evening ran through Cooks Straits -

27th. at Noon took our departure from Cape Palliser - Captain Cook has brought away another Zealander, a young Boy who was put on board by the father of Tibarua to accompany him. his Name is Co Goa -

Of the Hogs and fowls left in Charlotte Sound last Voyage we have neither seen or heard any thing -

March From the Coast of New Zealand we steered to the East and ENE with Variable Winds till we got in 39 degrees of South Latitude and 195 $\frac{1}{2}$ Et. Longitude Here we had the wind from ESE but it soon after veered more to the East and remained so fixed that in running one Latitude down to the (Southern) Tropic we could get no farther to the Eastward than 202 $\frac{1}{2}$ Et. at Greenwich - {March 27th.

On board the Resolution Hay fell short on which account they were obliged to kill a great many Sheep to lessen the consumption and enable them to keep the larger Cattle alive till we should reach some place where a fresh supply might be procured.

it has been remarked that in some parts of the South Seas scarce any Birds are to be met with, which was the case with us from New Zealand to the Tropic.

[Vol.1 - page 28]

March

Saturday 29th. At Daylight passed a good deal of Small Rock Weed and brush wood. Saw Land Birds and at $\frac{1}{2}$ past 9 discovered Land bearing NE which proved to be a small Island. did not get near enough before dark to distinguish any thing. Stood backwards and forwards all Night -

Sunday 30th. At Sunrise, within a mile of the South end of the Island where seeing no Anchoring place, Bore away alongshore for the West Side.

A great number of Men Armed with Clubs and Spears kept walking along by the Water Side and as we did not go much more than at the rate of 3 miles an hour, held way with the Ship hallowing and Shouting, which we answered. As we rounded the SW point, They got on the Reef that surrounds the Island and walk'd along it, the Surf every now and then washing them up to the middle.

Under the Lee of the Island we lay too. A Small Canoe with 2 Men came and paddled round the Ship several times. One of them gave us a Hevah something like the New Zealand War Song. Captain Cook hoisted out his pinnace and Cutter ordering our Cutter to join him, and went in Shore to see if Anchorage or a Landing could be affected. One of the Indians went with him, the other paddling the Canoe ashore himself. Several Indians swam off to the Boats - 4 of

[Vol.1 - page 20]

1777

March An Island -

30th. four of them being admitted into our Cutter were so troublesome, snatching every thing they could lay hands on, that we were glad to pull to a greater distance from the Shore out of reach of any more such Visitors - They did not know the Value of Iron. two of them were presented with Hatchets, but Looking

Glasses being afterwards given them, they threw down the Hatchets and would only take the Glasses on Shore -

finding no safe Anchorage nor Landing for our Boats, Captn. Cook returned to the Ships, the Indian who first came off, going on board with him. he soon after sent the Indian ashore and at Noon we made Sail greatly disappointed.

This Island is surrounded by a Reef at a Ships Length distance from the Shore. (its Length from) it's extent from East to West is about 6 miles and from North to South about 4, All around by the Sea Shore is one continued Grove, in which we could distinguish The Plantain, Banana, and Cocoanut Trees and others that appeared like the Bread fruit and Shaddock - The Middle of the Island rises in little Hills with here and there, clusters of Trees along the Ridges.

The people are Olive coloured; Stout, Muscular and well made. They Tattow on the inside of both Arms from the Shoulder down to the bending of

[Vol.1 - page 30]

An Island

the Elbow. Their Ears are bored and hang lank.

Their Arms are long Spears pointed at both ends - and Clubs some of which were not more than 2 feet long and shaped like the New Zealand Patow - they tie their Hair on the Crown of the Head, and in their impudence ferocity and Martial appearance, seem not to be outdone by the New Zealanders -

We saw no other Canoe than the little one before mentioned, which was too well finished to be their only one - it had a prow 7 or 8 feet high but for what use I could not make out -

This Island lays in 21 \ddot{y} ..54' So. Lat'de.
and 202 ..06 Et. Long'de

Variation 7 \ddot{y} ..30' East -

Stood again to the Northward. Wind ENE -

[Vol.1 - page 31]

1777

March Whal du

Monday 31st. At Noon saw an Island bearing NbE.

The Wind continuing to the No.ward of East could not fetch near the Land. kept turning to windward all Night

April

Tuesday 1st. At 7 in the Morning were within 3 Leagues but directly to Leeward when we discovered another Island to the Northward much smaller and very low. Continued turning towards the large Island all day but made no progress having very little Wind and a Swell against us. Saw many Fires on Shore in the Night -

Wednesday 2nd. At Sunrise a double Canoe came off in which was a large corpulent man who seemed to be a Chief - this Canoe was soon followed by Several others. After much invitation the Chief ventured on board having first sent a bough of a Plantain Tree as a sign of peace. These Indians brought no Arms and were very quiet, peacable and well pleased with every thing they saw, without appearing covetous or offering to pilfer -

Lieut. Gore with 2 of the Resolutions Boats soon came on board and with him Omiah who immediately entered into conversation with the Indians, they perfectly understanding each other. A bough of a Cocoanut Tree was brought and Omiah went through many ceremonies

[Vol.1 - page 32]

April Wat - du -

2nd. with the Chief repeating Short Sentences after him at each of which they pulled a leaf off the Bough - after these formalities the Chief invited us on Shore promising plenty of Hogs, Plantains, Cocoa Nuts &c -

This Island the Natives called Wat du. The Chief told Omiah there were 4 Otaheite men on shore - he likewise informed us the Small Island to the Northward belonged to him - it was named Modu - that at present nobody lived there but he frequently sent his people to catch Turtle.

The Chief was named Otenou hura. Captn. Clerke presented him with a Hatchet, some Looking Glasses and red Cloth - he then went into the Resolution Pinnace with Mr. Gore and Omiah, both Ships Cutters joining the party and some of the Indians in each -

A present was made up for the Aree of the Island whose name he told us was Oterrow. On coming in Shore there was too much Surf to attempt Landing in our Boats. The Islanders in their Canoes always waited close to the Reef and took the opportunity of the first high surf to paddle over the edge of it, and as soon as the Surf began to run back jumped out on the Reef and haul'd the Canoe over. Otenow hura went on Shore in a Canoe taking with him the present for the Aree who came on the Reef to look at us. We then rowed alongshore

[Vol.1 - page 33]

1777

April Wat du

2nd. from the North to the SE point of the Island without finding any opening in the Reef, or Anchoring Ground. Many of the Islanders came off to the Boats and were very peacable and friendly - two attempts were made to steal but on discovery, the things brought back again. A Hanger was taken out of our Cutter, and half way on Shore before it was missed. On speaking to an Indian who came with us from the Ship he called to the Thief who immediately sent the Hanger back. The Indian whose Authority procured the restitution was presented with a looking Glass and some Knives -

After returning to the Ships, a present came from the Aree consisting of a Hog, some Plantains and Cocoa nuts for each Ship. One of the Indians happening to be between decks at the time was left behind and obliged to take his lodging up with us for the Night.

Our Guest was entertained in the best manner the Ship could afford, being both fed and cloathed, but our kindness did not prevent his behaving in a very Scurvy manner.

Thursday 3rd. The Swell had during the Night, set the Ships considerably off Shore, and it was
[Vol.1 - page 34]

April Wat - du

3rd. late in the forenoon before we could sent the Boat away - At 11 The Resolution's Pinnace and Cutter with our Cutter went in Shore, hoping a Market for provisions might be settled by landing in their Canoes and sending things off to the Boats.

having brought a Graplin within 50 Yards of the Reef, Mr. Anderson the Surgeon of the Resolution and myself got in one of their Canoes, Mr. Gore and Omiah preparing to follow us in another. On landing, a Man with a Small Green bough took hold of me around the waist to conduct me, and a fellow who was stained all over black {their Natural Colour being Olive} kept the people off with a Small Stick; Some Armed Men marching before to make a lane through the Crowd who during this procession Sung a Short Sentence consisting of only four words, which I could not remember though they continued repeating it all the way, keeping exact time and in one Tone. having got about 30 paces from the beach, an Old Man with a large Bough met and saluted us by joining Noses. We afterwards met a second whom we likewise saluted, and at length came before the Aree who was seated on a Mat under a Tree. The Crowd now left off singing

[Vol.1 - page 35]

1777

April Wat - du

3rd. We saluted the Aree and sat down. The Aree was an elderly corpulent Man with a Strong Marked Sensible Countenance - he received us with great Cordiality but preserved a degree of gravity rather bordering on self consequence. his Clothing was a piece of very fine matting wrapped round his waist, and Sandals on his feet made of Cocoa nut Rhind platted. he was naked above the Waist as were all the Islanders.

While sitting by the Aree we heard a hissing and Rattling Noise that resembled the Grinding of Knives and Children's Rattles. This was followed by a party of Armed Men in three Ranks 7 or 8 in each, with Clubs and Spears; every other Man having a Spear which he held pointed forwards with both hands like a pike or Charged Bayonet - in this order they march'd or rather danced along without altering their pace or the direction of their Spears, the people being obliged to get out of the way as fast as they could. This procession was to clear the way for Mr. Gore and Omiah who were soon introduced to the Aree's presence. Omiah stopped at about 4 Yards distance, and sitting down made a Speech which the Aree

[Vol.1 - page 36]

Wat du

3rd. Answering, Omiah sent him a Small Bunch of Red feathers and then joined us. We were now treated by the Women with Singing and Dancing much in the same Stile as at the Society Islands. The Women are Small and handsome; Somewhat darker coloured than the Otaheiteans. Omiah to Shew his Gallantry took a Cocoonut and drawing a very handsome Dirk that had been given him in England, broke open the Nut and presented it to one of the Girls. The Aree and every body admired the Dirk exceedingly and I make no doubt the people were instructed to Steal it if any opportunity offered.

The Crowd being very great and the Weather Sultry, Mr. Anderson and I rose hoping to get a little fresh Air and look about us, but we were so followed and pestered either from curiosity or from what they could pilfer {which they now began to do without minding detection so they made sure of their Booty} that we thought it safest and best to return into Aree's Company again.

On coming back, Omiah with a most rueful countenance informed us, we Should not be suffered to go to the Boats - willing to be convinced, Mr. Anderson and I again left the company and walked towards the beach - but were stopped before we reached the Water Side by a man unarmed -

[Vol.1 - page 37]

1777

April Wat du

3rd. not being willing to understand him we would have gone on, when two fellows with Clubs Stept before us. We went back to Mr. Gore and Omiah who were in company of another Chief, the Man who first saluted us after landing, and whom we afterwards learnt was the Chief priest, a Station on the Islands of no less consequence than that of the Aree or King. Omiah argued a good deal with this man who told him we might not go away before Sunset - however to be more fully satisfied we all March'd towards the beach but were again Stopped. The Crowd now robbed us without any ceremony, especially when not in company with a Chief. A Fan given me by Oterrow, the Aree, they made 3 or 4 attempts to snatch, which proving ineffectual, one of them caught hold and wrench'd it away by force. in going up from the Water Side I was seperated from my companions and though I could see where they were by the Crowd that surrounded them, was not suffered to join, but detained by a Chief I had not before seen. with him I remained an hour which was the most uncomfortable Situation I experienced during our stay ashore. I made many fruitless attempts to go, giving him part of what yet remained, for I had come from the Ship well-provided: at

[Vol.1 - page 38]

April Wat du

3rd. length growing impatient I struggled with those who held me, when the Chief thinking perhaps he had had his Share, bid them let me go, and I rejoined my companions, resolved not to part again if it could be avoided.

We were now put in Charge of Otenow hura, the Chief who the day before, came first off to the Ships. Mr. Gore complained to him, that he had lost every thing out of his Pockets and had been stabbed by a Bayonet he wore by his Side, but got no other answer than that the Thief was gone with it to the Other side of the Island.

An Oblong Ring was soon after formed, Otenouhura seated at the Head and we in a Row on his left hand. being still pestered with pick pockets, I thought it best to have the Credit of giving away what was left, which I did mostly among the Women who were near us. The Sun was now near setting and Omiah again remonstrated with Otenowhura who was very reserved and scarce made any Answer. Omiah put the best face he could on the matter and taking one of their Clubs began to talk about the Otaheite Method of fighting. We then stood up in the middle of the Ring and Shewed them the Otaheite War Hevah. This, a good deal engaged their attention, and soon after Oterrow the Aree, who had not been with us a considerable time, came and stood near the

[Vol.1 - page 39]

1777

April Wat du

3rd. the Ring to see Omiah perform his Exercises. The Countenances of the Chiefs gradually cleared up, and they by degrees shook off that reserve and stiffness which they had hitherto observed. Oterrow seated himself by us: after laughing with Omiah about some part of the Otaheite fighting which it seems much resembled their own, he enquired where Britannia was and how we fought. Omiah happened to have a Musket Cartridge about him, which he shewed, and taking the ball out, told them if an Englishman but saw a Man, at any distance, he could kill him with his Musket. The powder was put on the ground and a live coal asked for which was thrown on to it; The Islanders were much astonished at the Sudden explosion, and enquired if we had many bullets and much Powder, which was answered in the Affirmative.

Whilst Omiah was thus entertaining them, I saw the Indian who was in the Boat the day before and got the Hanger restored. he was pleased at my recollecting him and afterwards presented me with a large Basket full of roasted Nuts, like Chestnuts.

Some leaves were now spread and 4 baskets brought, each containing a large portion of Roast Hog and Plantain. Oterrow retired and we were told to eat, each having one of the baskets.

[Vol.1 - page 40]

April Wat du

3rd. When we had done, the remains were tied up and put with some bunches of Coccoanuts. we were then informed we might go. A Conductor was appointed us, The Coccoanuts and the remains of our dinner were carried down to the Beach, and Canoes brought to carry us over the Reef - it was dark and we made the best of our way on board in our own Boats. being at liberty, I proposed finishing the remains of the dinner, but on examination found nothing but the plantains, the Blackguards having stole the Roast Pork. They made shift likewise to steal the basket of Nuts. Omiah's Dirk was gone though he pretended not to miss it till after he got on board.

It is not improbable that their first intention was to keep us wholly and that the sight of the powder and description of our Arms, which they had likewise seen in our Boats, made them alter their plan. Certain it is, they resolved we should pay well for our Dinner - and that the Chiefs of the Island connived at most of the Thefts and Robberies committed on us.

As to the business of Settling a Market, they told us to return next day when we should be supplied with every thing wanted -

These Islanders Tattow in different parts of the Body - it seems to be a kind of Heraldry; for those of the same family were marked exactly alike -

Our Travels ashore were so confined that we saw but

[Vol.1 - page 41]

1777

April Wat du - Modu -

One House, which was low roofed like the Amsterdam Houses. Their Arms were well carved and polished. Could we have had any intercourse with these people on an equal footing, there is little doubt but we should have found them hospitable and friendly.

Another name for this Island is Wennua no t'Manoo which signifies the Land of Birds - it lays in 20 $\frac{1}{2}$..00' So. Lat'de. and 202..00 Et. Long'de. is about 6 miles in Diameter and may be seen 7 or 8 Leagues distant from the Deck - Modu the lesser Island lays NW pr. Compass 10 or 11 miles distant from Wat du - is much lower and not half a League in length.
Var'nt. 6 $\frac{1}{2}$..45' Et.

Omah saw the 4 Otaheite Men at Wat du - they were cast away many years ago, and had families, having Married Wat du Women. they never heard of the European Ships.

Calm with much Lightning in the Night -

Friday 4th. in the Morning, Stood to the No.ward for Modu, Wind at ENE. at about 10 Sent Boats in Shore and made Shift to Land on the Reef - found no Inhabitants, but several Old Houses and burying Grounds. Got a good number of Cocoanuts here, and some Grass for the Cattle who had been at very short allowance lately. at Sunset returned to the Ships, the Boats were got in, and we made Sail to the Northward.

[Vol.1 - page 42]

April Herveys Islands

Saturday 5th. The light Easterly Winds having detained us so long and kept us so far the the Westward of the Society Islands as to exclude all hopes of being able to attempt any thing to the Northward this Year; it was judged necessary to put the Ships Companies to 2/3rds. allowance of all provisions, except Spirits, of which the full proportion Still continued to be Served -

Sunday 6th. At Daylight saw Herveys Islands bearing WSW 2 Leagues distant. They are 2 low Islands joined by a Reef, and extend 7 or 8 miles in length from ENE to WSW. They were first discovered in 1773 by Captn. Cook. Their Lat'de. is 19..17 So. and Long'de. 201..16 East. dist. 20 Leag'es. to the NW from Wat du. Var'tn. 7.04 Et.

At 8 some Canoes came alongside, but the Indians could not be prevailed on to come in the Ship - they were fond of Iron for which they traffick'd some Cloth, but it was not found safe to pay them beforehand. A Net which was hanging overboard with a piece of Beef intended for the Lieutenants dinner, they stole and carried (it) on board the Resolution where it was dressed for Captain Cooks Dinner - besides stealing every thing they could get at, they attempted to haul the Astronomers Servant out of our Cutter, and would have effected their purpose, had not one of our Men jump'd in the boat just time enough to prevent them -

[Vol.1 - page 43]

1777

April Herveys Islands

6th. The 2 Young Zealanders are much surprized that of so many people in our power, we have neither killed or made prisoners of any -

At 1 both the Ships Cutters were sent to the NW point to Sound. as they left the Ships, the Canoes all followed and on coming near the Shore, the Women brought their Arms down. Our Boats found 30 fms hard bottom at 2 Cables length from the Reef and good landing, there being very little surf, however they did not go ashore, as the Natives came down Armed ready to oppose them. at 4in the Afternoon the Boats returned.

The Anchorage not being very good, and the people so ill disposed We made Sail from those Islands to the Westward for Amsterdam, as in this Latitude there was but little Chance of getting so far to the Eastward as the Society Islands, before our Water, which now began to run Short, should be wholly expended.

Monday 7th. falling little wind. Steered more Northerly for Palmerstones Isles, which lay between 80 to 90 Leagues from Hervey's Islands and very little out of our Rout.

having ran about 40 Leagues from Herveys Islands, The Wind which had so long continued Easterly now became Variable, mostly from the NW and Northward with unsettled Weather.

[Vol.1 - page 44]

April Palmerstones Isles

Sunday 13th. Saw palmerstones Isles at Sunset within 3 Leagues. Stood off and on all Night.

Monday 14th. in the forenoon Boats were sent to look for Anchorage and Landing.

These Islands are 10 in number, very low and covered in Trees. The largest is not a mile in length or more than half in breadth - they are joined by a Reef and form an Oval Lagoon, whose longest Diameter from NE to SW is 7 or 8 miles -

Lat'de. 10 \ddot{y} ..04' So. Long'de. 197 \ddot{y} ..00' Et. Var'tn. 8 \ddot{y} ..04' Et. -

The Boats returned in the Evening, having found a landing place on the Southermost Island, and gathered some Scurvy Grass and other herbage for the Cattle on board the Resolution. They examined all along the SE. SW and West Sides of the Islands without finding any Opening in the Reef except for Boats - between the South and SW Island, the Reef bends in forming a Small Bay, and Soundings at 2 Cables length from the Reef 20 fathoms Sandy bottom with Rocks. The Wind being unsettled and the Sun every day increasing his distance makes it unsafe anchoring here at present - within the Lagoon on the North Side seems to be deep Water -

All this Day and Night, the Ships standing off and on.

Tuesday 15th. Boats at the Southermost Island getting Scurvy Grass and Cocoanuts, which these Island produce in great abundance - The Ships standing off and on.

[Vol.1 - page 45]

1777

April Palmerstone's Isles -

Wednesday 16th. Employed getting Cocoanuts from the SW Island. A Small Boat from each Ship remained on shore all Night, the Cool of the Mornings and Evenings being the most proper time for the people to work.

The Lagoon affords plenty and Variety of Fish - about the Skirts of the Woods near the beach, are great numbers of a Species of the Crayfish that inhabit dead Shells, generally known by the Name of Soldiers - Tropic, Men of War, Birds, and Boobies are very numerous - the Tropic Birds remarkable for the long feathers in their tails being red.

Some Curlieus were Shot which proved good eating. Saw Turtle Holes in the Sand, but no Turtle - These Islands like most others in the South Seas Swarm with Rats.

Had the good luck always to have Omiah on Shore, who proved a most useful companion for a party of this kind, being a keen Sportsman and excellent Cook and never idle - without him we might have made a tolerable Shift, but with him we fared sumptuously -

found in different parts of the Beaches, a piece of a Canoe carved, a broken paddle, some pieces of plank, in particular one very thick with Trunnel holes in it, and a piece of the Moulding of a Ships upper Works painted Yellow, with Nailholes iron moulder'd - these things

[Vol.1 - page 46]

April from Palmerstones Isles - Savage Island -

were found on the Lagoon Side of the SW Island and must have been forced over the Reef on the East Side of the Lagoon -

The Sea rises and falls here near 3 feet - it was at the highest about 5 in the Afternoon of the 17th. which is 3^o Hours before the Moon crosses the Meridian -

Thursday 17th. All this day Employed getting Cocoanuts and Scurvy Grass, in the Evening the Boats with all the people returned to the Ships, and we made Sail to the Westward - Wind Northerly -

Sunday 20th. Many Birds - Lat'de. at Noon 10 \ddot{y} ..08' So. Long'de. West from palmerstones Isles 2 \ddot{y} ..45'. Winds Variable. Weather unsettled with rain. -

Monday 21st. Our Stock of Water being reduced to 7 \ddot{y} Tons went to a daily allowance of 2 Quarts, exclusive of what is used for boiling the pease, Wheat and Sweet Wort - this regulation makes the one Hogshead last the 24 hours. Water on board at leaving Charlotte Sound - 27 Tons -

Wednesday 23rd. Philip Woodfield, Carpenters Mate, broke his Leg by a fall under the Tiller - which was set and he afterwards recovered - The Ships Companies, thank God, in good health. No Appearance of the Scurvy -

in the Night saw Savage Island, which we passed to the Southward of. it appears much like Wat du, somewhat larger. Lat'de. 19 \ddot{y} ..01 So. Long'de. 190 \ddot{y} ..08' Et.

[Vol.1 - page 47]

1777

April To Anamooka

Saturday 26th. left the Water Cask free again, having this last Week, caught at different times, by keeping the Awning spread, between 3 and 4 Tons of rain water -

Sunday 27th. had an Observation of the Sun's Meridian Altitude, the only one we have been able to get these 6 days / Lat'de. 20..36 So. Long'de. 186.. 30 Et.

At Sunset thought we saw the Land, on which account we spoke the Resolution. lay too all Night,

28th. At daylight, Seeing no Land, made Sail again. At 9 Saw the Small low Islands to the Eastward of Anamooka. at Noon were about a League distant from the Southermost of them. Lat'de. 20..27 So. Long'de. per Dead Reckoning from Savage Island 4..44 Wt. Var'tn. 9..20 Et.

At 4 in the Afternoon Saw Anamooka or Rotterdam and at 6 both Ships Anchor'd. An Island with 3 hills bearing NWbN about 4 miles and Anamooka beyond it NW \ddot{y} N. Many Islands all round. bottom 10 \ddot{y} fms. Sand. Sent a boat to Sound round the Ship. The Ground very uneven from 7 to 25 fms. within 2 Cables length. have been visited this day by a great many Canoes with Cargoes of Breadfruit, Cocoanuts, Shaddocks, fowls &c. &c.

Tuesday 29th. Got under Sail at Sunrise, wanting to get nearer Anamooka - had baffling Winds with much rain. At Sunset Anamooka bore

[Vol.1 - page 48]

April Friendly Islands
Anamooka

29th. NNE 5 miles. Sent a Boat to Sound intending to Anchor, but not finding less then 60 fms. any where near the Ship, were obliged to keep the Sea all night -

Wednesd. 30th. Attempting to get nearer Anamooka. Winds and Weather as yesterday -
At Sunset anchor'd in 47 fathoms Sand Anamooka bearing ENE½E distance 5 Miles -
This day an Order of Capt'n. Cook's, prohibiting all persons but those appointed by him, from trading with the Natives, was read to the Ships Company -

May

Thursday 1st. At Daylight under Sail - at 4 Anchor'd off North Side of Anamooka and Moor'd. Best Bower to ESE in 17 fms. Small Bower in 27 fms. hard rocky bottom -

Bearings

{The Island of Anamooka E½S to SW¾W distance off Shore 2/3rd. of a mile
{Beach where we watered SBE -

All Ships provisions, Spirits excepted, were Stopped;
Fresh pork and Vegetables sufficient to serve the Ships Companies being procured.

2nd. All the Cattle were sent on shore there being good pasturage -

The Agee or Chief of Anamooka, was named Tubow,

[Vol.1 - page 49]

1777	Friendly Islands
May	Anamooka or Rotterdam

A Middle Aged Man, more modest and sedate than we found the generality of these people. Another Chief of some consequence was named Kaper, this Man was remarkable for making long Orations to his countrymen - part of a House that Stood on the beach was assigned for those of our people whom it was necessary to keep on Shore to attend the Cattle, Watering, &c. - when anything happened amiss, application was made either to Tubow or the Orator and things went on with some degree of Order, the Natives being friendly, and well disposed.

Employed in overhauling the Rigging, Wooding and Watering - Water brackish and dirty - as to the Wood, could get no other than the Mangineal, which in 2 or 3 days time blinded the Woodcutters that they could not see for a fortnight after - and we were obliged to leave off cutting it -

Sunday 4th. The Small Bower Cable parted, being cut by the Rocks. The next day got the Anchor again.

About a Week after our Arrival some large Sailing Canoes came from Tongitabu or Amsterdam and a Chief who we were told was Agee, not only of Tongitabu but of Anamooka and all the Islands hereabouts. The Name of this Chief was Finow, a tall handsome Man, appeared to be about 25 Years of Age, had much fire and Vivacity with

[Vol.1 - page 50]

May	Anamooka
-----	----------

a degree of Wildness in his Countenance that well tallied with our idea of an Indian Warrior. Add to this, he was one of the most active men I have ever seen.

There is a ceremony among these people which an inferior Chief is obliged to perform on meeting a Superior that sufficiently indicates his dependence - he sits down before the person to whom he pays homage and bows his head so that his hair touched the others ^{foot} which he afterwards taps gently with his hand 2 or 3 times and then rises. This is never performed but by people of distinction to their patrons. Tubow at their first meeting was obliged to acknowledge the Superiority of Finow by paying him the Homage above mentioned -

Wednesday 7th. The Ground about the Ship being rocky, and safer Anchorage found more to the Westward, hove on the Best Bower intending to Shift our Birth, but were not able to purchase the Anchor - After repeated Trials, the Cable parted - being foul of the Rocks. Set the Sails and having run nearer the Resolution, let go the Small Bower Anchor which coming home we were very near driving foul of her and

obliged to carry out another Anchor. The next day got the Ship Moor'd in a good Birth near the NW point of the Island.

[Vol.1 - page 51]

1777 Friendly Islands
May Anamooka

7th. Bearings when Moor'd.

Small Bower in 20 fms.
NE point of the Island EBN
NW point. SSW^oW æ of a mile

Stream to WNW in 28f. Watering beach EBS
distance from the nearest Shore ½ a mile
Ground about the Ship clear of Rocks. bottom brown Sand and Shells

Lat'de. Obs'd. 20½..14' So. Long'de. 185½..24' Et.
Var'tn. 9..15 Et.

The Buoy rope of the Best Bower Anchor being Stranded (not being able to sweep it till the afternoon of the) gave us much trouble, not being able to sweep it till the afternoon of the 13th. and then chiefly by means of some Oil thrown on the Water, which rendered the surface so smooth that the Anchor was seen at the bottom, though in 17 fathoms, and the position in which it lay discovered.

Watering had been completed some time before, and the Cable got on board, Capt'n. Cook waiting only for our Anchor, which, as we had already broke one at Kerguelen's Land, was of too much consequence to give up easily.

During our Stay at Anamooka, Omiah lived ashore, as he did at every Island we visited in this Neighbourhood, having a House and a Wife appointed him. Omiah does not understand these people very perfectly, nevertheless he is by far the best linguist we have.

Tibarua the New Zealander, contracted the Venereal Distemper here -

[Vol.1 - page 52]

May To Happi -

Wednesday 14th. Wind SE with fair Weather
This morning got under Sail and Stood to the Northward, Capt'n. Cook having been informed of some Islands to the NE call Happi or Heabbi; under the dominion of Finow who had invited him thither - Many large Sailing Canoes in company with us, Finow's among the rest -

Our passage to Happi, though not more than 14 Leagues distant from Anamooka in a direct line, took up 3 days, in an intricate Navigation amongst Small Islands and Reefs, that, had the Weather not been very moderate would have been unsafe - The Sailing Canoes went on shore every night to some of the nearest Islands and as we lay too after Sunset, joined us in the Morning - Their Rate of Sailing was about 3 miles to our 2 -

Friday 16th. in the Afternoon Saw the Happi Isles, very low Land and next forenoon
17th.} Anchor'd in a good Bay -

These Islands besides being called Happi or Heabbi which signifies a Cluster, have each a seperate Name. They are joined together by Reefs and extend considerably in length from NNE to SSW, but not much in breadth -

[Vol.1 - page 53]

1777 Friendly Islands

James Burney - Journey on HMS Discovery, 10 Feb. 1776 - 24 Aug. 1779
Safe 1/64; Safe 1/79
Mitchell Library, State Library of NSW

May Happi Isles

17th. Bearings when Moored -

Extremes of the Happi Isl'd's. NbEÿE and SWbS.
Outer End of a Sandy Spit that runs off from the Land SWBS dis't. ÿ a mile -
An opening between 2 of the Islands EBS
Distance from the Shore æ of a mile -

Lat'de. Obs'd. 19..45 So.
Bt. Bower 22 fms to the SE. Small Br. in 30 fms. -
Clear Sandy bottom all round
Small Islands and Reefs without us to the Westward -

The Island South of the Opening is called Lofuga and is by much the longest, though from where we lay it appeared otherwise, on account of a bite to the Southward which falls in so far that we at first imagined the Land on the farther Side to be a different Island.

The peak of Oghas, and the Volcano on Mattafoa are in Sight both here and at Anamooka.

When the Ships were secured, Capt'n. Cook went on Shore with Finow, and Shortly after a present consisting of 7 Hogs and a great quantity of Coconuts, Yams, Sugar Cane, Breadfruit &c. was brought down to the Water Side and placed in two piles before a House where Captain Cook and several of the Gentlemen were Sitting with Finow and his Chiefs. A great number of Natives were assembled on this occasion, who seated themselves in a Ring of which the House formed a part, the Space immediately before being the Center. Here some of the Young fellows

[Vol.1 - page 54]

May Friendly Islands. at Happi

Advanced and Challenges were given for wrestling, by placing their left arm across the Breast, and Striking the bending of the joint with the right Hand open, after the Otaheite fashion; but their wrestling was much superior.

A Match being made the Wrestlers grappled taking fair hold of each others Clothes which are fastened round the Loins. They wrestle something like our Cornish men, and are very expert and active at it. When any one was thrown, the Victor was complimented with the following short Song in a kind of recitative -
" Too-wey - Hey - O Mar to yo-e".

The first word {Too-wey} sung by a single person, dwelling on the last Syllable; and the rest in full Chorus by the men on that Side of the Ring to which he belonged - during this song, the fallen Hero returned to his Seat and the Conqueror walked about to see if any would undertake him; if more than one, for frequently 7 or 8 would offer, he took his Choice and the rest retired. After the wrestling, a new and, to us, most extraordinary Spectacle was exhibited. Women boxing. A Woman advanced a little within the Ring and Sat down, which was understood as a Challenge and not long unanswered.

[Vol.1 - page 55]

1777

May Friendly Islands. Happi -

17th. In the boxing, they neither close or pull hair, and aim all their blows at the face, being very cautious not to strike lower. The Engagement is seldom decisive, not being Suffered to continue long enough; for by the time they have exchanged 5 or 6 good hearty Cuffs, Some friend parts them and they return to their Seats. Two fine Young girls advancing, one of our Gentlemen got up and interposed, which produced loud Shouts of Applause and much Mirth.

The diversion having lasted some time, was succeeded by one of the most manly and hardy exercises I have ever seen. Several Young Men made their Appearance with Clubs made of green branches of the Coconut Tree, about 3 feet long and 3 or 4 inches thick, making Motions and flourishes which were meant as general Challenges. Afterwards particular Challenges were given and all withdrew but the 2 Combatants who

We were entertained with Matches at Wrestling and Boxing by the Men. On first approaching each other, they keep their left Arm strait out as a Guard and watch for an opportunity to begin with Advantage. They aim mostly at the face: if one of them is knocked down which is frequently done the first blow, the battle is not Suffered to be renewed: and if it lasts more than 5 or 6 Minutes the by standers seperate them -

An hour after Sunset the Fireworks were played off with great success and the Evening concluded with {Singing and dancing} a Concert of Music accompanied with Singing and Dancing by the Women of which I shall speak hereafter -

[Vol.1 - page 59]

1777

May Friendly Islands. Happi -

Friday 23rd. Sent the Launch for Water, a place being found about 2 miles to the Southward. Water much the Same as at Anamooka -

This Morning, Finow with several large Sailing Canoes left us, Steering to the Northward for some Islands named Vow-vow, which we were told lay at the distance of a day's Sail in that direction. Finows business thither was to procure red feathers which were become a valuable article for Trade, our people giving any price for them on a suposition that they would turn to good Account at the Society Islands -

Monday 26th. Unmoored and at Noon got under Sail. Stood to the Southward alongshore keeping a Boat ahead Sounding. at 2 The Ship struck on a Small patch of Coral Rock there being 7 fathoms depth on each Side - threw the Sails aback and got off without hurt. At 6 Anchord off the 2 So'ermost of the Happi Isles and about 2 Leagues to the South of the place we left.

Bearings.

So'ermost of the Happi Isles S30W to SEÿS
The next Island ESE to NEæN dist. ÿ a League
{No'ermost point of the Island in Sight NBEæE
Small Islands and Reefs to the West & SW -
Depth 17 fms.
Sandy bottom

Tuesday 27th. Boats were sent in Search of a passage to the SW for Anamooka, and found one, but being difficult and intricate Captain Cook did not choose

[Vol.1 - page 60]

May from Happi -

To make use of it. during our Stay here some Canoes arrived from Tong i tabu, and a Chief who we were told was Superior in Rank to Finow. As Finow was absent on his Northern Expedition we were in doubt about the truth of this information.

The New Comer's Name was Powlahow. Elderly, and seemed remarkable for nothing so much as (for) for his great corpulency -

Thursday 29th. At Sunrise Weighd and stood towards the NW to get in our old Track again, being bound for Anamooka - Powlahow and 3 Sailing Canoes in company -

had a disagreeable passage with foul Wind and blowing Weather which obliged Powlahow to take Shelter at a Small Island.

June

Sunday 1st. Wind fresh from the South - not being able to gain Ground, Anchord amongst a Groupe of Islands, having kept the Sea the 3 preceding Nights, in which time the Resolution twice narrowly escaped being ashore -

Bearings at Anchor.
depth 47 fms. Sand
Id. of Feodar NbE^oE
a Small Island with 1 Tree, East 2 miles
No. point of a Reef WBS
Lat'de Obs'd. 19..53 So.

Lay here till the fourth when the Weather becoming more Moderate, got under Sail -

[Vol.1 - page 61]

1777
June Friendly Islands. Anamooka -

Thursday 5th. in the Afternoon Anchord off the NW point of Anamooka, nearly in our old birth
23 fms. Sand and Shells
NE point bearing East
Watering Beach ESE
NW point SWBS

Friday 6th. Finow returned, having been very roughly used by the Weather - he was in great Anxiety about the remainder of his Fleet, only 2 Canoes came in with him out of 9 or 10 that he put to Sea with -

Saturday 7th. At daylight 3 of Finow's Canoes arrived and before the day was over, only one was missing, which joined us as we left Anamooka. Powlahow likewise came in, and we were convinced of his consequence by Finow performing the Same Homage, himself had received from Teebow.

Sunday 8th. in the Morning left Anamooka, and Steered to the South and SSW for Tongi tabu or Amsterdam. Powlahow, Finow, and a large Fleet of Sailing Canoes in company

[Vol.1 - page 62]

[Chart]

Happi Islands: Tongi tabu: Ooha & other small islands.

[Notes]
Time of High Water on the full and Change of the Moon,
is nearly the same at all these Islands - i.e. 6H. 45M
rise and fall 5 feet perpendicular.
Flood from the NE

Var'n. 10ÿ..00 Et.

[Vol.1 - page 63]

1777
June Friendly Islands - Tongi-tabu -

Monday 9th. At 8 in the morning were within 3 Leagues of the North Side of Tongi tabu; off which lay a great many small Islands, Shoals, and Reefs. At 10 being under Topsails before the wind, we Struck on a patch of Coral Rock but setting all the Sails, forced the Ship over it and soon after Anchord in 7 fms. Rocky bottom at 5 miles distant from Tongitabu, North Side - for fear of getting too far intangled, having run over very uneven ground the last 3 Miles, with Soundings from 12 fms to 3; and in some places pieces of Coral Rock Sticking up within 7 or 8 feet of the Surface.

The Boats were sent to look for a Harbour and a better Channel - at 3 they made the Signal and we hove up the Anchors and Stood in, having a Clear Sandy bottom and the Water deepening - falling Calm, at 5 Anchord 2 or 3 miles from the Shore in 8 fms. a great many Reefs and Islands without us, to the NE and NW
-

Tuesday 10th. Weighd. at 2 in the Afternoon Anchord in a very good Harbour formed by Islands and Reefs running off from the Main of Tongitabu to the Eastward and Northward of us

Bearings - when Moored.

West point of the Bay - N82½W

NW point of Tongitabu beyond it, N70W

Wt End of an Island which forms the Bay N°E

outer point of the Reef that joins the Island N27W

Distance off Shore half and mile

Bt. Br. to qt. So.ward

10 fms fine black Sand -

Lat'de. Obs'd. 21..06 So.

[Vol.1 - page 64]

1777

June Friendly Islands - Tongi-tabu

Wednesday 11th. The Resolutions Tents with the Astronomers Tents were erected and the Marines of both Ships ordered on Shore as a Guard -

All the Cattle were got on Shore and a Market for provisions opened at the Tent. The next day a party of men were sent to cut Wood which was in great plenty and good. Water of the Same kind as at Anamooka we got at the Island to the NNE of us -

Almost every Day the first Week, we were entertained with Heavahs, Concerts of Music and dancing by the Women. The Music of their Concerts is very different from the War Heavah which as before mentioned is monotone throughout.

The Instruments are the same; Drums and pieces of Bamboo surrounded by men Singers whilst the Women sing and dance in a Circle round all -

They generally begin with a Single Voice in a Slow and Solemn Stile, the Women marching softly round: this is soon accompanied by an instrument, the other Voices and Instruments gradually joining till they arrive at the loudest pitch - they then begin by degrees to quicken their Time both in Music and dancing to the quickest possible.

Sometimes in the middle of their Career, a full Stop is made and the most profound Silence

[Vol.1 - page 65]

Tongitabu

Observed for about a Minute, when out they set again as if the Devil drove them -

In some of their pieces they practise the Diminuendo in the same degrees of gradation both with respect to Time and Noise.

The Whole is full, and Musical, mostly in the Minor Key of flat 3d. but is so uncommon a Stile that I could never get hold of more than half a dozen following Notes. Their organs and flutes have very little variety and are never used in their Concerts -

Some of their common Songs are in very good meter and Rhime in particular the following, which though ignorant of its meaning I thought worth noticing -

"O Chicheto - O Chiche matta la

O Chicheto - Vette Vala vala

Keonemar, Keonemar - Koar, Koar, Koar;

Keo vahey, Keo vahey - Ko hey, Ko hey Ko hey;

James Burney - Journey on HMS Discovery, 10 Feb. 1776 - 24 Aug. 1779

Safe 1/64; Safe 1/79

Mitchell Library, State Library of NSW

To Allilelay
Ki Allubey -

[Last cross hatched section indecipherable]

[Vol.1 - page 66]

1777

June

Friendly Islands.

Tongi tabu

Shortly after our Arrival, Omiah, in a Drunken fit, took some offence at one of the Centinels on Shore and struck ^him); which the Corporal who was present, resented by pushing him away and threatening to beat him. Omiah, who amongst these Islands had always past for a great Man, was so much incensed at this rebuff, that he immediately left the Tent and repaired to the Indian Chiefs, the 2 Young Zealanders with him, declaring his resolution to return no more to the Ship - The Affair was accomodated the next day -

Some time before this, Omiah had been invited by Finow to Stay, with an Offer of being made Agee of Ooha, or Middleburgh - had he been suffered to have accepted that Station, his continuance in it, after the departure of the Ships, would have been very precarious.

Their Government and degrees of Subordination were too difficult and intricate for us to unriddle.

The Chief people of the Island were Molliwagge, Tunebula, Powlahow, Fattefai and 2 of the Name of Tubow.

Molliwagge, who was the Father of Finow and one of the Tubow's, was said to be the King, but so old and helpless, that he scarce retained the use of his faculties. Tunebula, the next in Rank, was of very little consequence, being a down right Ideot -

[Vol.1 - page 67]

Tongi tabu

Powlahow, who was a good natured, sensible Old Man, governed in that part of the Island where our Ships lay, and to the eastward.

Fattefai, an indolent, inactive Man, was brother to Powlahow and had the SE part of the Island under his direction. One of the Tubow's had great possessions in the middle of the Islands.

The Western part of Tongitabu, with Anamooka, The Happi Isles, and all the Islands to the Northward, (was) were under the jurisdiction of Finow, but what gave him more consequence, was his Spirit, Activity and post as General.

Whenever the people of Tongitabu went to War they were headed by him - his followers were Numerous and more attached to him, than those of any other Chief - in Short he was by much the most popular Man amongst the Islands - Nevertheless, Finow with all his good qualities, was tainted with a degree of rapaciousness, that made him guilty of Actions rather bordering on Meanness and dishonesty: and which I believe he was chiefly tempted to, from a desire of being liberal to his adherents.

At Vowvow, the Islands where Finow went for red feathers, lived an Old Lady, who was stiled, Mother of all the Islands -

CY217 - J. Burney Journal

[Vol.1 - page 68]

1777

June

Friendly Islands.

Tongi - tabu

At present they do not seem to have any Quarrel on their Hands, either foreign or domestic: but had some little time before been at War with the people of an Island called Fidgie, that they told us lay to the WNW distant 5 days Sail - which, if in a Strait line, must be near 200 Leagues, but their Navigation is most likely, from one Island to another, which will considerably lessen the direct distance. Fidgie, by their account, is

James Burney - Journey on HMS Discovery, 10 Feb. 1776 - 24 Aug. 1779

Safe 1/64; Safe 1/79

Mitchell Library, State Library of NSW

much larger than Tongi tabu - the people not so stout, but more numerous, and in general an overmatch for our Friendly Islanders -

Superiority of Birth, is held here in high estimation; they plume themselves greatly in being related to a Chief, whom they sometimes Stile, "Agee laloonga lello finnua" - which signifies as near as I can make out "Lord in Heaven and Earth"

The greatest distinction in Dress, is the Hahoo or Cloth worn by people of Rank, being very neatly plaited. (and)

Wednesday 18th. This Forenoon the Marines were exercised on Shore, and in the Evening some Fireworks were played off -

Thus far ever thing went on Smoothly; Yet the Natives, however well disposed towards us, were not capable of withstanding Temptation when a fair Opportunity offered of Stealing any thing - which

[Vol.1 - page 69]

Tongi tabu

frequently occasioned Quarrels and in the End, destroyed that mutual confidence and good fellowship, we so happily set out with -

Some of the Superior People being detected, it was hoped that making an example of them, would deter other Offenders. They were accordingly Punished with a degree of Severity that had never before taken place. This, unfortunately, did not answer the intention; on the contrary, desire of Revenge became an additional Motive. Scarce a day afterwards passed, without some of our people being robbed or insulted. Instead of asking us into their Houses, which they had hitherto done, whenever we passed by, the Doors of their Plantations were Shut and fastened against us - most of the Sailing Canoes left the Bay, and it was evident, they began to be tired of our Company - An Accident happened about this time, that did not at all help to soften Matters: A Turkey Cock and some Sheep, were Stole from the Tent, and as there was reason to suppose this was done by the direction of the Chiefs, Captain Cook Seized on Powlahow, Finow, and Fattefai, who were detained till restitution was made, which happened the Same day.

Notwithstanding all our Quarrels and Disputes, we

[Vol.1 - page 70]

1777

June

Friendly Islands.

Tongi - tabu

were on tolerable good terms with all the Principal Chiefs again, before we Sailed; but did not recover the good will of the generality of the Natives.

Their Complexion is dark Olive. The Men are Stout, Active and perfectly well made: in wrestling with them, our people were almost constantly worsted. Their Boxing being different from the English Method, which is generally looked upon as the Standard, induced some of our Men to enter the Ring against them, thinking to retrieve the Credit lost at Wrestling; but in this, they were so much mistaken, that, of 4 or 5 who tried, not one escaped being drabbed, and as they did not take the beating with the Moderation and good temper before remarked in the Natives, were heartily laughed at.

They are very handy and have great contrivance: Some of their Thefts were executed with a degree of Genius, or rather finesse, that proved them well skilled in the Art of Confederacy - in Traffick they are fair dealers, and on the whole, I like them the best of any Indians I have yet been acquainted with -

The Women are remarkably fine limbd, and

[Vol.1 - page 71]

Tongi tabu

were they not rather Masculine, would be as desirable as the Otaheite Women. They are both equally kind to Strangers.

When a Relation dies, they disfigure themselves either by cutting off a little finger, burning their Arms in circular Rings, beating the Skin off their Cheek bones, or cutting the Hair Short and rubbing the Head with a mixture of Lime and Oil. Girls that were one day remarkable for their Beauty, have been altered by the loss of their Hair and the paint above mentioned, as to appear quite ugly the next. This Custom is common to both Sexes.

They are very carefull of their Sick, and shew great respect and attention to the Aged.

An Elderly Chief when he lays down to rest, is commonly attended by 2 or 3 Women, whose business it is to drum with their Hands on different parts of his Body, till he is fast asleep: they call this Tuggi tuggi -

it is customary for restrictions to be laid on individuals, which obliges them to abstain for a limited time, from some of the most common necessaries of Life - any thing so forbidden is expressed by the Word Tabu. Sometimes they are prohibited the use of Water or any thing cooked in Water. Sometimes a Hog is under Tabu, in which case he may not be killed - if a Coconut Tree, the Nuts may not be taken off, before the Term of

[Vol.1 - page 72]

1777

June Friendly Islands - Tongi - tabu

of the Tabu is expired. Whether this Custom is part of their Religion or what penalty is incurred by a breach, I know not; but they are very strict Observers of it.

When a thing is given them, they express thankfulness, by laying it on their Head.

The Tongi tabu Language is more distinct and intelligible than the Otaheite; being less composed of Vowels, and not affording so many instances of Words nearly alike, conveying different Meanings -

The G and K are sounds not used by the Otaheiteans and which they are not able to pronounce -

in many Words the Change of Language may be traced from the Society Islands to the Westward. As in Boa a Hog, at Otaheite; Boakka, at Tongitabu; and Wacka at Horn Island

The following few Words may serve for a sample of the Tongi tabu Language -

[Vol.1 - page 73]

Tongi - tabu

A Man -	Tongata	little -	gee
A Woman -	Finnie	great -	lahy
A Chief -	Agee	good -	1/ lelay. 2/ Mallelay
A Servant -	Tuar	Bad -	Kove
I -	Ow	Yes -	e - o
You -	Koe	No -	ki
The Eyes -	Matta	No More -	1/ ki gee. 2/ Ogee.
The Hand -	Nemar	do it -	fi
to exchange -	fuckatow	Again -	fogie
A Hatchet -	Togie	Encore -	Fi fogie. {frequently made use of at A Knife {their Hevahes
-	Haly		Mahaga
Beads -	Akkahooa	Sick -	
Cloth -	Ababa lange	dead -	Matte
Red feathers -	goolah	to eat -	Ki
A Ship or Canoe -	Wacka	Yams -	Oo - fee
A Hog -	Boakka	Coconuts -	1/ enu. 2/ Evynu

James Burney - Journey on HMS Discovery, 10 Feb. 1776 - 24 Aug. 1779

Safe 1/64; Safe 1/79

A Pidgeon -	Allubey	Sugar Cane - To	
A Thing -	Fow	to Sleep -	Moe
Only, alone -	Bey	Rain -	oo - ha
Come here -	How	to morrow -	Abunge bunge
let me see -	Momatta		

Monday 23rd. The Cutters of both Ships were sent in Search of a passage to the Eastward. The next Evening they returned, having found one, but very narrow and intricate.

Wednesday 25th. The Boats were sent to the Westward, but returned the same day, without finding a passage that way -

[Vol.1 - page 74]

1777

July Friendly Islands. Tongi tabu -

Thursday 3rd. this Morning, Hove up our Anchors, and ran out of the Harbour - at 11 Anchord without the Reef that makes the No. part of the Harbour. The Entrance of the Eastern passage being open to us -

Bearings.

The Watering Island SEÿS I mile

An Island in the passage EBS

Snake Island NWbWÿW -

20 fms. fine Sand.

In the Afternoon were obliged to Moor, on acc't. of the irregularity of the Tides - Stream Anchor to qt. North -

The Tents and Observatories were continued ashore, on account of the Eclipse of the Sun, July 5th. And here we hoped to gain Some Credit, by displaying our Skill in Prophecy, as, on a Similar Occasion, Columbus had done; but these expectations were defeated by the Cloudiness of the Weather, which rendered the Eclipse visible, only at times, through a Telescope -

The following presents were made by Capt'n. Cook to the Indian Chiefs - To Powlahow, A Bull and Cow, and a pair of Goats. To Finow, a Horse and Mare, with an English Boar and Sow - and to Molliwagge some Sheep - Whilst at Anamooka, Finow had a pair of Rabbits given him; besides these animals which are all new to them, they have made Shift to Steal 6 Cats, since the affair of the Cats at Happi, and which can be but ill spared from Ships swarming with Rats as ours are.

[Vol.1 - page 75]

Tongitabu

It was suposed these people had no Dogs, and the first we saw this time were thought to have been bred from a Dog and Bitch left here by the Resolution last Voyage: but from the numbers seen afterwards, it is certain they were provided before - The Sheep given to Molliwagge being neglected, and ill used by the Natives; Captain Cook, when the Tents were Struck, took them on board again.

7th. 8th. and 9th. Boats Employed sounding in the Passage to the Eastward -

Whilst we lay here, a solemn festival was Observed on Shore, which they call Annachee, held on account of Powlahow's Eldest Son arriving at a certain age. At this feast, which lasted 3 days, I was not present. We were told, that in a few weeks after our departure; a number of Men were to be sacrificed as an Offering to their Gods -

Thursday 10th. Wind ESE. at 7 in the Morning, got under Sail - All day turning to Windward between the Reefs and Islands that form the passage - most part of the forenoon a Strong Tide in our favour. At Sunset {The Resolution having come too before} Anchord with the Best Bower in 50 fms & veered to a Whole Cable; at a Short half mile distance from the Shore of Tongitabu; but being unluckily too near the edge of a Bank, drove off, having no ground at 120 fathoms - Hove the anchor up, and got under Sail again. At 1 in

[Vol.1 - page 76]

1777

July Friendly Islands. Oo - ha.

the Morning Anchord near the Resolution in 47 fms - distant from the Shore ° of a mile -

The E'termost Land of Tongi tabu ESE
& an Island that lays off the NE End. EBN
Smaller Islands and Reefs to the Northward -

Friday 11th. At 11 in the Forenoon, Weighd Wind Easterly.
All the Afternoon, turning to Windward. At Sunset got through the passage and by Midnight having
Weathered the Eastermost part of Tongitabu, Stood to the SSE for Ooha, or Middleburgh -

Saturday 12th. in the Forenoon, Anchord between the North and West points of Oo-ha, and Moord:
Best Bower in 30 fms to the ENE
Small Bower in 39 fms to the Sea. bottom, black Sand -
Extremes of Oo-ha NNE°E & SÿW }
Off Shore, half a mile. }
Ext's. of Tongitabu NNWÿW and WæN -
An Island off the NE End of Tongitabu NbW°W -

Lat'de. Obs'd. 21..21 So.

Var'tn. 10ÿ E'terly

This is the Same Road the Resolution and Adventure Anchord in 1773.

Finow was to have accompanied us hither, but was prevented by the death of an Old Lady, whose funeral he
was obliged to attend, and on whose account, he was to part with a very good Head of Hair -

A Market was opened at the Landing Place for provisions, of which a good Stock was purchased, and
Several Casks of Pork Salted for Sea Use. Captain Cook presented the Agee of Ooha with a Ram and Ewe,
which he seemed

[Vol.1 - page 77]

Ooha.

to Set a greater Value on, than Molliwagge had.

Tuesday 15th. This Afternoon, two of the Resolution's people, walking in the Country, were stripped and
beaten; On which account, Capt'n. Cook sent a party of Marines ashore, whose appearance had such an
effect, that not only the things were restored, but the Thief delivered up. He was next day ransomed for a
large Hog.

Every article of Trade we brought, was Marketable before we left these Islands. Many things not regarded at
first, became Valuable as their use was discovered. The most capital Articles were blue and green glass
Beads, Hatchets, Linnen, and all kinds of Glass Ware.

Thursday 17th. This forenoon got under Sail: Wind SE. and Stood to the Southward. At Sunset, took our
Departure from Ooha, bearing NE distant 2 or 3 Leagues; which was the last we saw of the Friendly Islands.

[Vol.1 - page 78]

1777

July. From the Friendly Islands.

Made the best of our Way to the South and Eastward, till we Crossed the 20th degree of South Latitude:
after which we Steered to the Northward of East, having Variable Winds.

Tuesday 29th. At ½ past 6 this evening, were taken with a Heavy Squall of Wind which carried away our Maintopmast, Split most of our Sails, and did us other considerable damage. by Midnight cleared the Wreck, all of which was saved, except a little of the running Rigging. Kept firing Guns in the Night for the Resolution whom we lost Sight of at 11. Soon after daylight saw her again

Wednesd. 30th. The Weather too rough to attempt getting up another Topmast -

Thursday 31st. The Sea being smoother and the Weather more moderate, got the broken Stump down and the Spare Maintopmast up, when we found the head of the Main mast Sprung and were obliged to get the Topmast down again.

August 1st. Woulded the Head of the Mainmast and Rigged a Spare Jib Boom for a Topmast on which we set a Mizen Topsail, the Mainmast (not) being judged not Strong enough to bear a larger Sail.

Sunday 3d. Served Ship Provisions to the Ships Company, Our fresh Stock and Vegetables being all expended. The Anamooka & Tongitabu Water turns out much better than we could have expected.

[Vol.1 - page 79]

August Otobui.

Friday 8th. in Lat'de 24½ So. fell in with the SE Trade. The same day about Noon, discovered an Island to the Northward of us. Ran towards it till Sunset, when we haul'd our Wind and Stood off and on during the Night.

Saturday 9th. At day light Bore away for the Land. At 7 haul'd round the SW point and soon after brought too under the Lee of the Island. had Soundings at about half a mile distant from the Reef, Depth 30 fms, fine Sand. The Extremes of the Land bearing EBN and South.

Some Canoes came off but would not venture on board. This Island is called Otobui by the Natives, and is 4 miles in length, high uneven Land. It appeared on first making it, like 2 seperate Islands being high at each end, and low in the middle - it is surrounded by a Reef at a good distance from the Shore, with Openings that seem Navigable for Ships. At a little distance from the East End lay 3 small, low Islands.

Lat'de. 23½..22' So. Long'de. 210½..50' E
Var'tn. 7½..00' East -

At 9 in the forenoon, made Sail to the Northward -

[Vol.1 - page 80]

1777

August (Society Islands) Tiarraboo or Otaheite Etc.

Tuesday 12th. At daylight Saw the Island of Osnaburgh bearing NE. and at 7 Otaheite appeared in Sight to the Westward. by Sunset were within 2 miles of the NE point of Tiarraboo, or Otaheite Etc. {I.e. little Otaheite , the Name given to the SE division of the Island} - Stood off and on, all Night.

Wednesday 13th. in the Morning made Sail for Oaiti peha Bay, where we Anchoard and Moord

Bt. Bower in 32 fms. Small Bower to the SW in 30 fms
bottom black Sand -
The Opening between the Reefs N36E to N71W
Watering Place SE½S. dist. off Shore 1 mile -
Var'tn. 6..00 Et.

The first (News) News we heard was of the Spaniards having been here. According to the Otaheitean Accounts, they made their first appearance Shortly after Capt'n. Cooks departure hence, in the Resolution 1774. On hearing Captain Cook was at the Society Isles, they left Otaheite and ran down to Huaheine and Ulietea; but missing the Resolution did not Anchor there. Some Months after this, they again appeared at Otaheite and Staid a considerable time in Oaiti peha Bay, where they set up a wooden House, which they

had brought in pieces number'd. This House we found here, with some Old Clothes and Lumber in it. before the Door, a Cross was erected, with the following inscription -

[Vol.1 - page 81]

Tiarraboo in Oati peha Bay

CHRISTVS. VINCIT. CAROLVS III. IMPERAT. 1774

While they remained here, the Captain of one of their Ships died and was buried ashore. At their departure they took away 4 of the Natives whom they carried to Lima, and left a person behind called Martemo, {according to the Otaheite pronunciation} who lived on the Island, till the return of the Spanish Ships with the 4 Otaheiteans.

The Spaniards left a great many Lima Hogs, which are now mixed with the Otaheite breed; some Goats, Dogs, a Bull and Cow, the latter of which died. They likewise planted Vines which have been neglected. Omiah got some Slips and means to cultivate them where he fixes his residence.

Coming here immediately from the Friendly Islands, it is impossible to avoid taking notice of the difference of form and Shape in the People, and drawing a Comparison by no means favourable to the Otaheiteans. Nevertheless the Women, though not so perfectly well made, have in general handsome faces, and a softness of feature truly feminine; and which was only to be found in a few individuals at the Friendly Islands.

Thursday 14th. All Ship provisions were stopped, great Plenty of pork and Vegetables being procured. Spirits

[Vol.1 - page 82]

1777

August Tiarraboo, or Otaheite Etc.

14th. Spirits likewise were stopped by consent of both Ships Companies, it being represented to them, that, as we had missed the season this year to the Northward, there was great probability of our falling short in that Article, in which case, it was better to go without, in a Warm Country, than in a cold one.

We deferred doing any thing with our Mainmast till we Should arrive at Mattavi Bay. Our only employment at present was getting the Ship caulked.

Omiah found one of his Sisters Married and Settled at Oaiti peha, and behaved in a very kind and generous Manner to her and her Husband, who was a greedy Rascal, ever begging and never satisfied. indeed Omiah's Vanity and extravagance was but too great an encouragement to people of this Stamp. he always went drest in the most tawdry manner he could contrive, and was constantly attended by a large Train of Followers whose only motive was to profit by his profusion and carelessness. Omiah did not however, forget his Court to the Great Men: to Owyeduar, the Aree of Tiarraboo, he presented a fine piece of red feathers, and sent another equally good for Otu the Aree at Mattavi -

Our Otaheite Friends we found as great Thieves as formerly. Any person caught in the fact, we Shaved

[Vol.1 - page 83]

To Mattavi Bay

half his Head, one Eyebrow, and took off half his Beard; which effectually rid us of his Company till his Hair grew again, and at the same time made him an Object of ridicule and contempt to his Countrymen: whereas a more serious punishment always created pity and compassion for the Offender -

Before our departure, some fireworks were played off on Shore. Captain Cook likewise made the following inscription on the other Side of the Spanish Cross -

GEO.III. REX. AN. 1767. 1769. 1773. 1774. 1777.

Saturday 23d. Wind Easterly. This morning got under Sail and left Oaiti peha. At Sunset, The Resolution anchored in Mattavi Bay. Our Ship being 2 or 3 miles astern and Night coming on, we were obliged to keep the Sea all Night -

Sunday 24th. at 11 in the Forenoon Anchored in the Bay, in ^o less 5 fms Sandy bottom and Moord,

Small Bower to the NNW in 11 fathoms.
Outer point of the Reef N30W.
W'termost Land in sight S64Wt.
One Tree Hill - S21W
Dist. off Shore 3 Cables Length

Var. 6 $\frac{1}{2}$..00' Et.

[Vol.1 - page 84]

1777

August Otaheite in Mattavi Bay

Unbent our Sails, began to Strip the Main mast and raised Sheers for getting it out. The Tents of both Ships were erected near Point Venus and all the Cattle sent on shore. Capt'n. Cook gave Otu, a Bull and 2 Cows, some Sheep, Peacocks, Ducks and Geese.

it was soon discovered that Otu had been cheated of the piece of red feathers sent him by Omiah; The Tiarraboo Chief with whom it was intrusted, having substituted a much Smaller piece in its Stead. Otu sent a Messenger to demand restitution of Owey duar, who would not be prevailed on to part with it. However to compromise Matters, The Tiarraboo people we were informed, afterwards sent Otu a Man they had devoted to Sacrifice, and who was to Serve Otu as a Victim on the next occasion.

So great a Value was set on red feathers, that Otu gave 10 large Hogs for a Tongi tabu head dress made of them.

Here we found Odidde, the man who went with Capt'n. Cook in his expedition to the Southward - 1773. 1774. and for whom many things were sent from England as a present.

Tuesday 26th. at 8 this Morning got out our Mainmast and sent on Shore to be fished and repaired. Employed Watering, repairing the Sails and Rigging and Caulking the Ship.

[Vol.1 - page 85]

Otaheite in Mattavi Bay -

Wednesday 27th. This forenoon a report was raised of 2 Spanish Men of War being arrived at Oaiti peha, this was afterwards backed by the testimony of an Indian, who affirmed he had been on board the Spanish Ships, and produced a piece of Spanish Cloth quite new. Captain Cook immediately sent Lieut. Williamson in the Resolution's Cutter round for information, The Indian going with him - in the mean time we got all our Guns mounted, and cleared the Decks. The Otaheiteans all the preceeding day had been very inquisitive, to know whether Spanish and English Ships fought, when they met.

Friday 29th. in the Night the Boat returned, with an account of no Ships having been seen or heard of. Their Indian informer jumped out of the Boat and made his escape, before they got half way to Oaiti peha.

Went on again with our business as usual. On examining our Casks of Bread, found some damp: got 13 Butts on Shore to be sifted and Aired.

As the Ship was now considerably lighter than at leaving England, we took in 11 tons of Stone ballast - being rather overmasted makes it the more necessary to keep her well down in the Water.

September 5th. Got in Mainmast, and began to rig it.

CY 217- J. Burney Journal

[Vol.1 - page 86]

1777

September Otaheite. in Mattavi Bay

Sunday 21st. These last 2 or 3 days a great many War Canoes have come into the Bay from different parts of the Island; The Fleet consisting of 65 Large Canoes decorated with Colours and tricked out in all their finery: in which were about 1300 men.

This force was collected on account of a quarrel with the people of Immeo. We were informed that 2 men had been sacrificed on this occasion. An Old Chief named Towhah, went over to Immeo, with a Strong Party, and was to have been joined by the rest; but Maheine the Arre of Immeo, managed Matters so well, as to buy off Otu, and soon after Towhah was obliged to return, not without leaving Marks of his Anger. Some of the Chiefs were much displeas'd with Otu's conduct, who acted without their concurrence. The Otaheiteans in general do not speak of Otu with any great veneration, except the inhabitants of Mattavi and Oparre, which two districts were more immediately under his jurisdiction. Some little things he was guilty of, in his intercourse with us, shew'd him but poorly qualified, to support the (Character) Dignity and consequence of an Aree.

Old Towhah seem'd to be the most gentleman like Character of any of the Otaheite Chiefs. Of him Omiah bought a

[Vol.1 - page 87]

from Otaheite

very good Sailing Canoe, chiefly for red feathers, and borrowed a number of Men to manage her -

Saturday 27th. being ready for Sea, Struck the Tents, and got the remainder of the Cattle on Board. While they were ashore, a young Ram was killed by the Spanish Dogs, for which Captain Cook order'd all that were seen to be shot. This effectually secur'd the Sheep from further Mischief; for the Otaheiteans immediately tied up their large Dogs.

Monday 29th. This Afternoon got under Sail and left Mattavi Bay, Steering to the Westward for Immeo. Whilst we were heaving the Anchors up, Otu came on board, to complain of the Girls going with us from Otaheite, several staying on board by their own desire: but in consequence of this complaint, they were all sent ashore. We afterwards learnt that Otu was disappointed, and that we had Mistaken his Errand, as he did not care about the Girls, but expected his consent to have been obtained by some Considerable presents.

As we ran down by Oparre, Captain Cook fired his great Guns, by way of Salutation to his Otaheite Friends at parting - After Sunset we brought too and lay with our Maintopsail aback all Night.

[Vol.1 - page 88]

1777

September Immeo

Tuesday 30th. at Daylight Made Sail - at 7 Br't. too off the North Side of Immeo and sent Boats in Shore to sound. At 10 made Sail, and at 11 Anchor'd in a good Harbour, with the Small Bower in 7½ fathoms muddy bottom: and Moord with a Hawser fast to the West Shore -
The 2 points of the Harbour N7½W & NWbN -
A fresh Water River S62..30 Et.

On the North Side of Immeo are 2 Harbours; that in which we Anchor'd is the Westernmost. As we came in we saw the remains of several Houses that had been burnt by Towhah -

Here we found plenty of Wood and employ'd a party of Men on shore cutting it.

The day after our Arrival, most of the Otaheite Girls who had been sent on shore at Mattavi on account of Otu's complaint, came on board to take up their Quarters with their old Friends again.

October

Thursday 2d. Maheine, the Arre of Immeo, visited the Ships this morning and received several presents.

By the end of this Week, compleated Wooding & Watering -

Wednesd. 8th. The Indians having stole 2 Goats belonging to Captain Cook, some Canoes were seized on, by way of reprisal. The Resolutions Cutter was Sent to the Eastward, and in the Evening returned with one of the Goats.

Thursday 9th. The other Goat not being restored, the Boats of

[Vol.1 - page 89]

October Immeo.

of both Ships were Armed and went to the Westward, the Marines marching round by Land the same Way - in the Evening the whole party returned without the Goat, after having destroyed some Houses and Canoes.

Friday 10th. At Daylight, the Boats with the Marines went to the Eastward, in the Afternoon the Indians brought the Goat to the Ships. At Sunset the Boats returned.

In these expeditions, Omiah secured for himself 2 good Canoes, and a quantity of Plank was carried on board the Resolution, which served afterwards to build his House.

Saturday 11th. Hove up our Anchors, and at Noon ran out of the Harbour, being bound for the Society Islands; Omiah in his Sailing Canoe leading the Van. His Prize Canoes were hoisted into the Resolution. –

JAMES BURNEY - Journey on HMS Discovery, 10 Feb. 1776 - 24 Aug. 1779. Volume 2

[page 90]

Journal of the Proceedings of his Maj'ys. Sloop, the Discovery -
Chas. Clerke, Commander - in Company with the Resolution - Capt'n. Jas. Cook
Oct'br. 12th 1777 - to July 24th 1778

Jas. Burney
Latona

[Vol.2 - page 91]

[Illustration - landscape]

Longitude in, is reckoned from Greenwich -

[Vol.2 - page 92]

1777

October Society Islands. Huaheine -

Sunday 12th. about 3 in the morning, Omiah fired a Musket which we imagined was intended as a Signal for Land. We learnt afterwards his Canoe had nearly overset in a Squall, by bad Steerage; and that his firing was meant to signify his distress.

At Daylight Saw the Island of Huaheine. At Noon Anchord in the Northern passage of Owharre Harbour with Best Bower in 19 fms and got Small Anchors and Hawsers ready for Warping further in. The Best Bower Anchor having hooked the Rocks, were unable to Weigh it. After many unsuccessful efforts, Slipped the Cable and left a Boat on the Buoy to prevent the Indians stealing it. All the Evening Employed Warping up the Harbour . At 8 Anchord with the Small Bower in 12 fms Muddy bottom and Moored with the Stream Anchor to the SSW

Bearings

Ext'es. of Huaheine NNWæW & S13W

a Sandy Island SSWæW
Middle of the Northern passage through the Reef NWbWÿW
dist. off Shore 1ÿ Cables Length -
Var'tn. 5..56 Et.

The Tents were erected and the Marines of both Ships sent on shore for a Guard.

Wednesd: 15th. Our Launch swept the Anchor and brought it on board - found part of the Cable damaged by the Rocks, which we cut off.

Oemiah, whose intention hitherto had been to settle at Huaheine, now declared he would fix at Uliatea - this

[Vol.2 - page 93]

1777

October Society Islands. Huaheine.

This new Resolution did not last above 2 or 3 days, when he resumed his former plan again, the Chief people of Huaheine allotting him some Land. The Carpenters of both Ships were sent on Shore to make a close Wooden House, Whilst Omiah with his people built a very good House after the fashion of the Country to live in, the Wooden being designed for a Store house to keep his things safe.

The present Aree of Huaheine was a Young Boy named Terri terrear. Oree who governed when we were here last voyage, had dwindled into a private Man, and retained none of his former consequence. The Mother of Terri terrear had a great Share in the Management of Affairs and appeared very capable.

Wednesday 22d. A grand Heavah was performed on Shore this Evening, at which several of our folks were present, the dancing part by a very pretty Girl just arrived from Bolabola - in the midst of this Entertainment Mr. Baily missed a Brass Sextant out of his Tent, and soon after, Capt'n Cook entered the Heavah House and put an end to the performance. After much enquiry, Omiah seized upon a Uliatea Man who was strongly suspected to be the Thief; and Captain Cook sent him on board the Resolution. A strict look out was kept the remainder of the Night, to prevent any

[Vol.2 - page 94]

Huaheine

Canoes from leaving the Bay, lest the Sextant should be carried off the Island. Some Canoes were seized paddling along shore, and taken on the board the Ships. Next Morning, however, the Sextant was brought back, the Prisoner having given information where it might be found. The Canoes were released, but the Offender was punished with the loss of his Ears and Hair. This proved a very troublesome business to Omiah, for when the Man got on shore, he openly declared that as soon as the Ships sailed, he would revenge the loss of his Ears with Omiah's Death; and as an earnest of his future intentions, he destroyed all the Vines Omiah had brought from Tiarraboo and planted here. for which, on the forenoon of Saturday 25th. he was taken again and put in close confinement on board the Resolution.

All this time we were employed examining the remainder of our Bread, which was sent on Shore to be Aired and Sifted. 1856 lbs. {near 4 Weeks Bread at full allowance} was found bad and condemned, being damaged partly by damp, and partly by Vermin.

Wednesday 29th. in the Night, by the Centinel's neglect, the Prisoner found means to escape. The next day a Reward of 20 Hatchets, was offered by the 2 Captains for the reapprehending him, but to no purpose.

[Vol.2 - page 95]

1777

October Huaheine.

The Escape of this Man obliged Omiah to be constantly on his Guard, and not without reason, for

31st. on Friday night, an attempt was made to burn his House, which he was fortunate enough to prevent, and with the Assistance of Some of the Huaheine Chiefs, caught one of the party, who was next morning taken into confinement on board the Resolution. The Principal, Omiah's Sworn Enemy, got clear off.

The time of our departure approaching, and Omiah's Affairs being settled, he gave several dinners, to which the Gentlemen of both Ships and some of the Huaheine Chiefs were invited. As Omiah was Doubtfull how his Countrymen would behave towards him after the Ships were gone, many long Orations were made by the Chiefs with promises of friendship and protection in case he or his property should be attacked.

Being bound to Ulietea from here, Omiah had private instructions that if things turned out to his liking, he was to send two White Beads - if indifferent, two Brown Beads. And if he was ill used or in distress, two Blue Beads were to be the Signal.

[Vol.2 - page 96]

November Society Islands. Huaheine - to Ulietea.

Sunday 2d. This Morning the Man taken in the attempt to burn Omiah's House, was released at the request of Terri terrear's Mother, she engaging for his future good behaviour -

In the Afternoon hove up our Anchors and ran out of the Harbour -

Omiah at parting with his Old Friends, Shed Tears of real and unaffected Sorrow. The two Young Zealanders who staid with him, both Shewed great reluctance at leaving us. These Boys had quite shaken off that savage disposition so inherent in their Countrymen; Tibarua the eldest, was remarkable for being of a placid modest disposition: the other was a fine lively Boy, somewhat given to Mischief.

There were left with Omiah an English Boar and Sow, a Horse and Mare, and a pair of Goats.

We Stood towards Ulietea under an easy Sail till 11 o'Clock and then brought too for the remainder of the Night. Wind Easterly.

Monday 3d. At Sunrise Bore away. Soon after, Sailed round the South End of Ulietea and Stood alongshore to the Northward. At 4 in the Afternoon Anchor'd in the passage of Ohamaneno Harbour in 29 fms. - and warped up the Harbour.

[Vol.2 - page 97]

1777

November Society Islands. Ulietea -

Tuesday 4th. Made the Ship fast close to the South Shore and fixed a Brow from the Ballast port to the High Water Mark, in hopes some of the Rats would leave us; The Resolution for the same reason, having haul'd close in to the Northern Shore -

We found Ulietea still under the government of Oreo, the same Chief who managed for Opune when we were here before - Opune lived at Bolabola and never came near us. Oreo and his family gave us a hearty wellcome -

We were obliged to Strip our Foremast here, the Foremost Bolt in the Trussel trees being broke and the Fore Cap Split - On getting the spare Cap out of the Hold, it proved to be rotten and unfit for service. We therefore made use of the Old Cap again, after Strengthening it with Iron Hoops and Bolts.

Wednesday 12th. Sent our powder on Shore to be Aired and Sifted, at a Small Sandy Island near the Entrance of the Harbour.

Some Canoes from Huaheine brought us an account of Omiah's being in good health and living in harmony with his Neighbours - When they left Huaheine he was trying to catch one of his Horses that had broke loose -

[Vol.2 - page 98]

Ulietea -

We were not a little surprized by the Stealer of the Sextant making his appearance here, who told us he was friends with Omiah - probably an Axe or two might have helped to accomodate Matters. This News of Omiah was confirmed by the Arrival of his Sailing Canoe with 4 White Beads to Captain Cook, and to acquaint him his She Goat had died in Kidding - to repair this loss 2 Young Goats were sent by the return of his Canoe -

Thursday 13th. One of the Resolutions Marines who was Centinel ashore at the Astronomer's Tents, deserted in the Night with his Arms and Accoutrements.

Saturday, The Boats of both Ships went to the NE Side of the Island in search of the Deserter, and there found him.

Monday 24th. in the Morning, two of our Company were missing. On enquiry among the Indians, were informed, they had Set out the Night before in a Canoe for the NE part of the Island, intending thence to pass over to Huaheine. Cptn. Clerke in the Resolutions Pinnacle and our great Cutter went immediately (dispatched) after them -

Tuesday 25th. having received intelligence of their being at Otaha, Captain Cook went thither, but returned in the Evening without them, they having escaped to Bolabola -

[Vol.2 - page 99]

1777

November Society Islands - Ulietea -

There was reason to apprehend if these people got clear off; their success would encourage others who might be disposed to leave us - it therefore became necessary to take some effectual Step; and that no person for the future might be long absent without being missed, the Ships (Companyies) Companies were Mustered every day at Sunrise and Sunset.

As Oreo, besides being of the first consequence, was the most active and stirring of any of the Chiefs, it was judged, the most likely method for recovering the Fugitives, would be, to make it his interest to exert himself -

Wed. 26th. An Opportunity offered the next morning, Oreo's Son Tioora; his daughter Poeduar, and his Son in Law Bu doe, {husband to Poeduar} coming aboard for a Visit. They were informed, after having got safe down in the great Cabin, that they would be detained untill our people were brought back - during their confinement, we were most disagreeably serenaded every morning, by the female relations and dependants of the Prisoners, who lined the Shore and surrounded the Stern of the Ship in Canoes, to perform the ceremony of Lamentation, which consisted in striking their Heads with Sharks Teeth, till the blood ran down over

[Vol.2 - page 100]

November Ulietea -

their face and Shoulders, at the same time Shedding Tears and repeating set words in a most dismal tone. each after having thus mourned a decent Share, became easy and chearfull; as if perfectly satisfied they had done their duty.

Though the Men exhibited none of these Marks of Sorrow, yet they were not idle. A plan was concerted that would have procured the release of their Chiefs had it been conducted with any common degree of prudence; which was no other than to use our own methods against us by seizing on the Captains in their Rambles. This Scheme failed from want of Secrecy, and not waiting a proper opportunity.

Thursday 27th. Afternoon: We had notice given us by the Otaheite Girls who had all along stuck by the Ship, that the Indians were laying in wait for Capt'n. Clerke, then walking on Shore: this tallying with Several Suspicious circumstances that had before been remarked, a large Party went in quest of the Captain, and arrived time enough to prevent them making the attempt. Oreo had all the Morning been importunate with

Captain Cook to go with him to the fresh Water River to bathe, Which hitherto he had daily done, but omitted then on account of some business.

This project miscarrying, Oreo seriously went to work about getting our people, as the only means of

[Vol.2 - page 101]

1777

November Society Islands. Ulitea to

27th. setting his family at liberty: and for that purpose the next morning he departed for Bolabola - Struck the Tents and got every thing on board -

Friday 20th. Cast off from the Shore and Warped the Ship into the middle of the Harbour where we Moored. Best Bower in 15 fms Soft Sandy bottom Stream Anchor to the Westward -

Bearings.

The passage between the Reefs WBN to Wæ S

2 Sandy Islands WSW and NWbW

Watering Place N 65 Et.

Distance off Shore ° of a mile

Var'tn. 6ÿ..05' Et.

Do not imagine we got rid of any Rats, by laying close to the Shore -

Sunday 30th. This Afternoon, the Stragglers were brought on board, and the Indian prisoners released.

The next Week employed Wooding, completing our Water and getting ready for Sea.

December

Sunday 7th. At Noon Sailed out of the Harbour - ran towards Bola bola till dark, when we shorten'd Sail and Lay too till daylight.

Monday 8th. by Noon were off the Entrance of a good Harbour on the West Side of Bolabola; but the Tide of Ebb made so strong out, that the Resolution, after making several Trips, without gaining Ground,

[Vol.2 - page 102]

Bolabola

December

8th. brought too Main topsail to the Mast. The Boats of both Ships were hoisted out and went on Shore, to enquire after one of Bougainvilles Anchors, which we were told were brought hither from Otaheite. Iron, the most valuable Article of Traffic in the South Seas, was by this time become exceeding scarce. At 6 They returned with part of a broken Anchor Captain Cook bought of Opune. hoisted the Boats in and Made sail - Soon after Sunset lost Sight of Bolabola, which was the last we Saw of the Society Islands - in the Night ran to the NW till we imagined ourselves past Tubai, some small Islands that lay 4 or 5 Leagues NNW of Bolabola, and then hauld up to the Northward - Wind ENE -

It has been generally imagined, the Language of Otaheite and the Society Islands, is confined to a few Words, and those easily learnt - for my own part, with the help of above 300 Words got by heart, and those the most common in use, I could never understand the Natives when talking to each other: Sometimes by their gestures and catching a Word or two, the meaning of a Single Sentence or the Subject of their discourse ^ (might) be gathered. In their intercourse with us, they commonly adopted our Mistakes and Method of pronunciation for the better dispatch of business; but when any Strange party arrived. we were half lost again, till the Old Standards gave instructions to the New comers

[Vol.2 - page 103]

1777

December from the Society Islands - to a low Sandy Island

continued our Course to the Northward, with a Moderate Trade Wind and fair Weather.

Thursday 18th. Lat'de. at Noon 6°, 24 So. Long'de. 203° 15' Et. at Greenwich.
Saw a great number of Gannets, Tropic and Men of War Birds.

Monday 22d. At Midnight Crossed the Equinoxtial Line.
Long'de. from Greenwich 202° 20' Et.

Wednesday 24th. at 7 past 7 Saw Land to the NE, which proved to be a low Sandy Lagoon Island -
at 5 in the Afternoon Anchord to Leeward of the Island in 27 fathoms Sandy bottom.

Bearings

The Land from SSW to NE

distance off Shore, half a League -

More Land in Sight from the Masthead to the Northward, being a continuation of the Island beyond an
Opening into the Lagoon

Lat'de 1° 53' No.

Var. 5° 49' Et.

Thursday 25th. At Daylight Sent our great Cutter in company with the Resolutions Boats to Sound, and one
of our Small Boats in Shore fishing. At Noon the Boats returned - Plenty of Fish, but no landing near the
Ship - Hove up our Anchors as did the Resolution and made Sail to the Northward, a more convenient
Anchoring Place being found, and an Opening into the

[Vol.2 - page 104]

[Chart of Island]

This Island is surrounded by a Reef, except the Entrance into the Lagoon - within the Lagoon is Shoal Water
and Rocks, that make it difficult Navigation for Boats.

Where we Anchord, had good clear Ground about the Ship -

The Tide rises between 3 and 4 feet perpendicular -
High Water 4H. 30 M. after the Moon passes the Meridian -

[Vol.2 - page 105]

1777

December At a Low Sandy Island - Turtle ing -

25th. Lagoon with good Landing. No Inhabitants here.
In the Afternoon Anchord with the Best Bower in 17 fath'ns. - Sandy bottom

Bearings.

No.ermost point of the Land N 6° 30' W

A Small Island NEbE to ESE

distant half a League -

at each end of this Island is an Entrance into the Lagoon

No.ermost Land in Sight SWbS

Lat'de. 1° 58' No.

Long'de 202° 32' Et. a Greenwich

Var'tn. 5° 49' Et.

Friday 26th. Our Boats away fishing and looking for Turtle.

27th. Served Biscuit again to the Ships Company, our Stock of Ulietea Vegetable being expended.

Monday 29th. At Noon, our great Cutter, which these 2 days past had been to the Southward within the Lagoon, catching Turtle, returned to the Ship; leaving behind 2 Men {Bart'w. Lowman and Thos. Tretcher} who had straggled from the Boat the day before. This party had been in great distress for want of Water, as they Staid longer than was intended on account of the people missing. When they came away one of the Resolution's Boats were Turtleing near the same place; but as it was probable the Stragglers might lose their way, and perish for want of Water, Mr. Hollamby, one of our Midshipmen, with 3 Men, were immediately sent on Shore in search of them, each carrying 2 Quarts of Water and a pint of Brandy.

In the Afternoon the Launches of both Ships, went round the South point of the Island to fetch Turtles.

Tuesday 30th. at 7 in the Evening the Launches returned

[Vol.2 - page 106]

1777

December At a Low Sandy Island, catching Turtle -

30th. And with them Bart'w. Lowman, who had fell in with the Resolution's people in the Forenoon. Mr Hollamby's party got intelligence from him which way to look for Tretcher, whom he left the Evening before unable to walk further.

These 2 Men had mistook their Way in bringing Turtle across from the sea Beach to the Cutter at the Lagoon Beach. They had made Wells in 2 or 3 different places, but found the Water quite Salt, and were reduced to the necessity of Cutting Turtle's throats to drink the blood as it issued from the Wound, and of plunging hourly into the Water to cool themselves, on account of the of the excessive heat of the Sun on the open Sand.

Wednesday 31st. At day break the great Cutter as sent within the Lagoon to assist in searching, but returned at Noon pr Signal, Tretcher being brought on board. Mr. Hollamby found him a few hours after receiving the intelligence from Lowman, and walk'd from the South End of the Island to abrest the Ship.

[Vol.2 - page 107]

1778

January from Turtle Island

Thursday 1st. Called in all our Turtleing parties and hoisted the Boats in -
We have caught here 90 Turtles from 50 to 200 lbs weight each - The Resolution more -

The longest extent of this uninhabitable Spot is about 7 Leagues - it produces nothing but some Small Brush Wood, and a few old Coconut Trees, that are blighted by high winds or long droughts - Rats here.

Friday 2d. at daylight got under Sail and Stood to the Northward - before Noon lost Sight of the Land.

Tuesday 6th. Went to an Allowance of 2 Quarts of Water pr day - kept our Still at work every afternoon in fine Weather, which gave us about 11 Gallons of fresh Water in 4 Hours.

Our Outer Best Bower being very much wore and no longer trustworthy, cut it up for Junk, and bent a new one.

Till we past the 8th degree of North Latitude, the Wind blew mostly from the ESE. afterwards from ENE and NE.

Sunday 11th. past a great many Turtle. Birds about the Ship -
Lat'de. at Noon 10 \dot{y} ..44' No.
Long'de. is 204..00 Et.
Var'tn. 5..30 Et.

[Vol.2 - page 108]

1778

January Sandwich Islands -

Sunday 10th. At daylight Saw High Land bearing NEBE^oE and at 9 in the forenoon Saw more Land to the NNW.

Lat'd. at Noon 21..15 No.

Long'de. 201^y Et.

having a light Easterly Wind we ran on to the Northward all this Afternoon and Night.

Monday 19th. at ^y past 6 in the morning, the Body of an Island bore NNW^yW about 6 Leagues and Land in Sight ENE^yE 12 or 14 Leagues dist't. from ^y past 6 till Noon ran 14 miles North.

Lat'de. Obs'd. 21..40 No. An Island bearing from NæW to N77W. The Land to the Eastward not in sight.

At 1 Afternoon, some Canoes came off to us, being then within 2 miles of the SE end of the Island: Bore away along the South Side, keep at the distance of half a League - passed several Small Towns. At 5 having run 15 miles to the Westward, a Strait Shore all the way, brought too and Sounded: got Ground at 20 fathoms Soft black Sand. The Island then bearing from EBN to N60W dist'ce. off Shore 2 miles. Another Island in Sight W^yS 6 or 8 Lgs.

Hauld off Shore upon a Wind and Stood backwards and forwards all Night.

Tuesday 20th. At daylight made Sail in Shore -

At ^y past 9 the Resolution made the Signal for our Great Cutter, which was sent in Shore with

[Vol.2 - page 109]

Sandwich Islands - A-tou-i.

their Boats to Sound. At 3 in the Afternoon they returned. in searching for a Landing place, the Resolution's Pinnacle was attacked by the Indians, some of whom endeavoured to overset her in the Surf, whilst others were dragging her on Shore. This Obliged our people to fire, and an Indian who had got in the Boat was Shot dead, on which the rest immediately desisted.

At 4 Anchord in 21 fms brown sand

This Island bearing from N72W to S65E.

A fresh Water River N36 Et.

Off Shore 1^y miles.

Lat'de. 21^y..56' No.

Long'de. 200..20 Et.

Var'tn. 8.45 Et.

body of another Island WæS about 7 Leagues

A High Clump of Land N86 Wt.

Sounded about the Ship - good Ground

An Order was given, prohibiting any intercourse with the Women here, to prevent our communicating the Venereal distemper, which many of the people had contracted at the Society Islands - No Women were admitted into the Ships and particular care taken that no person infected or recently cured, Should be suffered to go into the Boats.

Wednesday 21st. in the Morning the Launches were sent for Water, with a large party of Marines for a Guard. The Indians were so much frightened by yesterdays quarrel that on our people's Landing, they all fell on their faces in token of Submission - A great many Canoes about

[Vol.2 - page 110]

1778

January Sandwich Islands - Atou-i

James Burney - Journey on HMS Discovery, 10 Feb. 1776 - 24 Aug. 1779

Safe 1/64; Safe 1/79

Mitchell Library, State Library of NSW

21st. the Ships all day, with Hogs, Fowls, Sweet potatoes and Plantains, which they sold for Iron - A few Coconuts and 2 Heads of Bread fruit were brought on board: of these, there is reason to suppose they have no great Stock, almost all the Country we have hitherto seen, being open and laid out in Plantations of Yams, Sweet potatoes and Sugar Canes -

This Island is called by the Natives, Atou-i - that to the Westward Oneehow, and the one we first saw, {to the Eastward} Wou a hou a - besides these, they tell us of another Island to the SE, and one to the NW called Tummatta papappa - to the Whole of them, Captain Cook gives the name of the Sandwich Islands.

This day the Grog was served again, it having been Stopped by consent of the Ships Companies, since the 15th of August -

Thursday 22nd. The Weather Cloudy with rain - too much Surf for landing - but few Canoes came off.

Friday 23d. Smoother Water - at Daylight sent our Launch Watering - The Resolution having Anchored in foul Ground, Weighd in order to shift her Birth, but the Wind dying away, and the Current Setting Strong to the Westward, She fell to Leeward of the

[Vol.2 - page 111]

Sandwich Islands - Atou-i

Good Anchoring Ground, and was obliged to Stand off Shore - this afternoon completed our Water - Lost some Casks by the Surf, and one Stole by the Natives.

At Sunset the Resolution bore West, about 3 Leagues, The Swell setting on Shore and not Wind enough to keep the Ship under Command, prevented our getting under Sail to join her.

Saturday 24th. At Sunrise, Saw the Resolution to the Westward. At 9 got under Sail, but the Wind dying away, were obliged to Anchor again.

This Morning a great many Indians were about the Ship, till a large Canoe in which their Chief was, came and ordered them away. Those that were slow in obeying, he gave chase to, and fairly ran over 4 Small Canoes, leaving the owners swimming by the wreck; after which he came alongside - This Chief was a tall young Man, he came half way up the Side but his attendants would not suffer him to enter the Ship - Captain Clerke made him several presents, and received in return a very curious Bowl in which they make their Kava, a Liquor used by almost all the Indians in the South Seas.

In the Afternoon, an Indian who had been very usefull in keeping his Countrymen orderly, when we were Watering the day before, came alongside and desired us to send our Boats on Shore for a present

[Vol.2 - page 112]

1778

January Sandwich Islands. Atou-i to Oneehow -

24th. of provisions. This invitation could not be accepted, as we every minute expected a breeze and wanted to join the Resolution, who fell fast to Leeward and was now but just in Sight from the Masthead. At 5 o'clock we got under Sail with a light Air off Shore. At 8 it falling Calm, were again obliged to Anchor in 44 fathoms, half a mile without our last Birth -

Sunday 25th. A Moderate breeze from the ENE. At sunrise Saw the Resolution bearing SSW. got under Sail and at 9 Joined Company. At Noon the Island of Atou-i bore EÿN to NbW. distance 6 or 7 miles.

26th. 27th. & 28th. Endeavouring to regain our Anchoring Birth -

Thursday 29th. finding the Westerly Current too strong to Turn against, This Morning Bore away, and Stood close to the south End of Oneehow, and Sent Boats to Sound for Anchorage.

At Noon both Ships Anchor'd near the SW Side of Oneehow. We in 33 fathoms brown Sand-

Bearings -

Oneehow from N4W to S82½E

Dis't. off Shore 1^o miles -

A Small Island S52W ab't. 6 Leag's.

Lat'de. Obs'd. 21½.48' No.

Long'de. 199 - 45 E

Var'tn. 8.45 Et.

Sent Boats on Shore to Trade for Yams and Salt.

[Vol.2 - page 113]

[Chart]

Sandwich Islands

High Water At Oneehow 6 H. 05 M .

Rise and fall 3 feet.

[Vol.2 - page 114]

1778

January Sandwich Islands Oneehow -

Friday 30th. The Boats of both Ships on Shore at Small Town, trading for Yams and Salt - in the Afternoon our great Cutter parted from her Graplin and narrowly escaped being lashed to pieces against the Rocks. The Surf increasing, all the Boats came off, being obliged to leave some of the People on Shore -

Saturday 31st. Cloudy Weather with much rain and a very high Surf. No Landing. The people remained on Shore -

February

Sunday 1st. Smoother Water - got the people and every thing off. The Resolution filled 4 puncheons of Water at a Small Cove under a high Bluff point to the Eastward. No Water there in dry Weather -

Captain Cook gave the Inhabitants a He Goat, two She Goats, an English Boar and Sow.

At ½ past 6 in the Evening, the Resolution's Anchor came home and She drove out to Sea. Hoisted Lights as a Mark for her during the Night -

Monday 2d. At Daylight Saw the Resolution being WbS distant 4 Leagues. At 10 got under Sail and at 2 in the Afternoon Joined her. At ½ past 4 made Sail to the Northward and left the Land -

[Vol.2 - page 115]

1778

February Sandwich Islands

The Language of the Islands seems to be a Mixture of the Otaheite and Tongitabu Languages which is the more extraordinary as they are 2400 miles distant from Otaheite and still further from Tongitabu -

A Man - Tongarta

A Hog - Bo hah

Eyes - Marta

Belly - Opu

Teeth - Neo

Set Down - Anno ho

&c. &c.

The Houses are thatched close down and shaped something like our Cottages - the Walls lower. Their great fault is want of light, having no Window and but one small Door, which there is no entering without Stooping -

Their Dress in general is Cloth, beat out of the Bark of a Tree, but on extraordinary occasions they wear Caps and Clokes of red and yellow feathers, which seem to have been made in imitation of Spanish Dresses. We saw here a piece of a Sword, which they said came from an Island to the SE - The Red Feathers are inferior in brightness of Colour to those of Tongi tabu -

[Vol.2 - page 116]

Sandwich Islands -

Their Arms are Lances, Bows and Arrows, and Small Wooden Daggers; all well wrought, but, I think, very innocent weapons. We have no where found more hospitable and friendly treatment, than amongst these Islanders.

The Women, who are not much inferior to the Otaheiteans, have been more forward in their offers; which may be chiefly attributed to the backwardness on the part of our people, under the restrictions before mentioned.

besides Completing our Water, we procured at these Islands, an excellent Stock of Pork, Yams, Sweet potatoes, Salt and Salted Fish.

[Vol.2 - page 117]

1778

February

From Sandwich Islands

till we passed the 30th degree of North Latitude the Wind continued Easterly, and after became Variable. Made the best of our Way to the North and Eastward -

As different Weather was to be expected from what we had lately been used to, a great part of our running Rigging was Shifted with new Cordage, the Old Sails unbent and put by, and other necessary preparations made -

Saturday 14th. At 10 this morning thought we saw Land to the WSW.

Lat'de. in 31 \ddot{y} ..25' No.

Long'de. 205..00 Et.

Var'tn. 12..00 Et.

Friday 28th. Thos. Goodman, Seaman, fell out of the Fore Shrouds and broke his Collar Bone, which was set and he soon in a fair Way of recovery -

March

6th. Saw Drift Wood, Sea Weed, and many Divers.

Saturday 7th. At Day light the Resolution made the Signal for seeing land, which proved to be the Continent of America - at 8 had Soundings at 95 fms, the Land bearing from NNE to ESE dis't. about 9 Leagues.

Lat'd. at Noon 44 \ddot{y} ..32' No.

Long'de. 235 \ddot{y} ..10' Et.

Var'tn. 17 \ddot{y} E.

[Vol.2 - page 118]

[Chart]

Track from making the Continent March 7th.
to K. George's Sound

[Vol.2 - page 119]

1778

March Coast of America -

Sunday 8th. Wind Westerly - The Weather unsettled, and a Swell setting in from the Sea, Stood to the SSW to Clear the Land.

Wednesday 11th. Wind North. at 7 in th morning, Stood within 4 miles of the Land.
our Lat'de. then 43..42 No.
Long'de. 235..21 Et.

from the Northermost Land in Sight which bore NÿW about 11 miles distant, to a point 6 Leagues SE from us, a Straight Shore - round this point the Lands bends in, and we saw a continuation of it as far as SSE pr. Compass. The Country Woody - in many places covered with Snow. Saw Smokes.

Tackd and ran off. The Wind veering round to the Westward with dirty Weather, were obliged to keep an Offing -

Saturday 14th. Saw the Land bearing SE. Lat'd. 43..17 No.
A fresh Gale from the NW with Hail and Sleet -

Sunday 15th. Our Stock of Yams being expended, served Biscuit again, at 2/3ds. allowance.

Sunday 22d. Made the Land again, having Moderate Weather

At Noon Lat'de. Obs'd. 47..18 No.
Long'de. 235..18 Et.
Vartn. 17..45 Et.

The Land bearing from NNE to East - distance 6 Leagues.
Ran to the NNW {Wind at West} till Sunset 7 Leagues,
when the Land in Sight bore f rom NÿW to SEbE and an
appearance of a Harbour NbEÿE 7 or 8 miles distant.
Night coming on, we Tackd; expecting to Stand in, the

[Vol.2 - page 120]

1778

March Coast of America King George's Sound

22d. Next Morning; but the bad Weather again obliged us to keep the Sea: on which account we went to a daily allowance of Water. 2 Quarts each Man.

We Saw no more of the Land till the

29th. in the Forenoon.
At Noon the Land in sight from N 54 W to East - 5 or 6 Leagues distant.
Lat'de. Obs'd. 49..28 No.
Long'de. 232.. 40 Et.
Var'tn. 19ÿ Et.

Stood in Shore with a fresh breeze from the WNW - at ÿ past 1, Bore away for an Appearance of a Harbour to the ENE. at ÿ past 4, the Resolution made the Signal for Anchoring, and soon after we got in the Entrance of a deep Sound and past a Town on the Western Shore. Some Canoes came alongside, shaped not unlike Norway Yawls, No Outriggers.

Being pretty well within the Sound, tried Soundings and got bottom at 55 and 60 fathoms.

Ran to the NE farther up, in hopes of Shoaler Water, but at dark were obliged to Anchor in 67 fathoms, 3 or 4 miles within the Entrance of the Sound, and within a quarter of a mile of the South part of an Island. The Resolution being Anchored further up to the NE in 86 fms -

Bearings.

The Entrance of the Sound from SSW to S 54 Wt.

South End of a large Island from NEbN to N 40 W. dis't. ° of a mile -
found the Tide drained out all Night.

Some Canoes kept Watch round the Ship -

Monday 30th. At Daylight, Boats were sent from each Ship to look for better Anchorage.

At 1 they returned, having found a good Harbour about 6 miles to the Westward;

[Vol.2 - page 121]

King George's Sound

[Chart]

Ship Cove is in 49°..35' No. Latitude
and 233..26 Et. Longitude
Var'tn of the Compass 19° E

High Water 0 H. 20 M. after the Moon passes the Meridian -
Tide rises and falls 8 feet 9 Inches.

[Vol.2 - page 122]

1778

March America - King George's Sound

30th. whither we should have gone, but in the Evening, discovered a Small Cove not half a mile distant, in the Island near us, with good Anchorage, Wood and Water -

Up the Sound to the NE and Northward, the Water deepens to above 100 fathoms -

Tuesday 31st. Shifted our Birth, and Moord Head and Stern in the Cove; the Small Bower out in 17 fms muddy bottom, and Hawsers fast to the Shore.

The Outer points of the (Harbour) Cove bearing ENE and S½E. The East Shore of the Sound about a mile distant.

Captain Cook names this King George's Sound. It is between 2 and 3 miles wide at the Entrance, and opens one way to the NNW, the other to the NE. how far it runs up, was not discovered.

The Head of the Resolution's Foremast being sprung, it was stripped, and on examination found necessary to be got out and repaired. her lower Rigging being in the same State, they were obliged to fit New Main Shrouds.

Wooding, Watering, repairing Sails and Rigging, Caulking and other necessary Jobs, were carried out as usual - both Ships fixed additional Rudder Chains, to secure the Rudder in case of getting intangled in the Ice.

We Brewed Spruce Beer, and were supplied plenty of Fish by the Indians, with whom we were soon upon familiar terms; they visiting us every day, and for the first Week, never failed leaving two

[Vol.2 - page 123]

1778

April Coast of America - in K. George's Sound

or three Canoes to watch us during the Night -

Wednesday 1st. This Morning, 2 Indians had a quarrel whilst alongside the Ship. The Occasion we could not make out. The Disputants who were in different Canoes, seized each other by the hair with both hands, and held their foreheads close joined together, probably for fear one should dash his head against the others face: All the (Canoes) other Canoes hastened to the Spot and the Hubbub became general. Several Indians Stripped themselves naked ready to join in the quarrel, which however ended in Words and the Plunder of 2 or 3 Canoes.

Their Language, though not in general guttural, is harsh, and when they are in a passion, or very earnest in discussion, seems insufficient to express their feelings. This they make up in Action, jumping at each other and nodding their Heads, in a manner that resembles Punch and the Devil. While any Single person is Speaking, no one seems to attend or to take the least notice; yet when he has finished, another will begin; whilst the former, however violent during his Oration, Sits down with the Same apparent indifference - listening without looking -

We did not on our first Arrival, discover the Inhabitants to be a White people; so disfigured

[Vol.2 - page 124]

in King George's Sound -

and besmeared were they with paint and dirt - of those who were clean enough to distinguish, some few had a colour equal to our Country people in England -

Their common Dress is either a Skin, a Blanket of their our Manufacture, or a Cloth made like the New Zealand Hahoo, but of much coarser flax, which is thrown loose over their Shoulders. They wear besides a Wicker or Straw Hat, and a Short Cloke of the flax Cloth made with a hole in the middle to put the Head through, and hangs down equally all round. This last is chiefly worn by the Women.

Saturday 4th. At 11 this forenoon, all the Indians about us, went ashore to the Watering place and haul up their Canoes, on account of another party ^ (who) they said were coming. Soon after, a Number of Canoes from the outer part of the Sound, made their appearance off the South point of the Cove, Armed with Pikes, Bows and Arrows, Knives, and a Weapon of the same Size and intention as the New Zealand Patow, but in various Shapes. Most of them were dressed in long loose Buck Skins doubled, and made up like a Woman's Shift without Sleeves; being sewed at the Sides, with seperate openings for the

[Vol.2- page 125]

1778

April Coast of America. in K. George's Sound

the Head and each Arm. both Ships turned all Hands to Small Arms; and those who were at work ashore, assembled on a Rock where the Astronomer's Tents were erected. in this Situation we dined under Arms, the New Comers all the While remaining off the South point of the Cove, and the other party on Shore. After Dinner we went on with our own Work till 3 in the Afternoon, when they drew near the Watering Place and we took to our Arms again. A Parley ensued between the 2 Parties, which ended in a reconciliation; The Canoes separating and the Indian's taking off their War Dresses.

Their pikes are Stout Sticks headed with a large bone, well Sharpened at the End. Their Arrows are likewise headed with bone, and bearded, the inner end featherd. Their Knives are in form of a semicircle, the outer part being the Edge, and made of Iron, which we found them well Stocked with. They had Copper, but in no great quantities. besides the Arms above mentioned, they brought a Cargo of Stones.

In the Evening, several of the larger Canoes Saluted us, by making a Circuit round the Ships, and

[Vol.2 - page 126]

King George's Sound -

giving 3 Halloos at their departure. They paddle in most excellent time, the foremost man every 3d. or 4th Stroke making flourishes with his paddle.

The Halloo is a Single Note on which they all join, Swelling it out in the middle and letting it die away - in a Calm with the hills around us, it had an effect, infinitely superior to what might be imagined from any thing so Simple.

These Indians are rather quarrelsome, and though not overcautious in their own conduct, very apt to take offence at the Slightest indignity - but to do them justice, when they are angry, any little degree of submission immediately pacifies them.

In Stature they nothing exceed Mediocrity, the Men rather lean. The Women are in general broad faced with high Cheek bones, and Jolly, likely Wenches, but they most filthily ornament themselves with Paint and Blubber over their Hair and Face; yet are they more Modest and Coy than the Women we met with between the Tropics.

The Men daub their Faces with Tallow, in which they Scratch different kinds of figures, and Powder their Hair with the finest down of Birds, which is thrown out of a Machine like a powder Puff.

The Noses and Ears of both Sexes are bored, to hang any thing by way of Ornament -

[Vol.2 - page 127]

1778

April Coast of America. in K. George's Sound -

Sunday 5th. The Canoes from the outer part of the Sound visited us at daylight, leaving a Canoe without the Mouth of the Cove to watch -

at 7 The Guard Canoe made Signals, on which all the rest left the Ships and paddled as fast as they could round the South point of the Cove, to prevent being cut off; at the same time the Party from the Northward, which was now the Strongest, made their appearance. They stopped abreast the Middle of the Cove, and single Canoes passed and repassed, in consequence of which, the flying Canoes returned, and after a Short parley, erected their Pikes and began a Song, beating Time with the lower end of the Pikes against the Sides of the Canoes. having finished, they laid down their Pikes, and the other Party who had during the performance Sat still, now reared theirs and gave a Song in return; which being ended, the Southern Canoes Saluted them with the parting Halloo, and went off; leaving the Market to the quiet possession of the Northern Party for that day.

Their Song was composed of a variety of Strange Placed Notes, in a Solemn Stile: all in Unison and well in tune. The first Words were given out by one man, as a Parish Priest gives out the first Line of a Psalm.

[Vol.2 - page 128]

in King Georges Sound -

5th. This Afternoon a Canoe alongside, treated us with a Song of a different kind, which was very laughable. Three people Sung, beating Time with their Paddles, whilst one with a Deer Head Mask on, made Motions resembling that Animal. They have great Variety of Masks not ill executed, in likeness of different Animals and Birds, which they probably use for Decoys. They have Snares and all kinds of Bird Calls, and are excellent at imitation, as well in Voice and Action as in Carving. The shyness of the Game here, is a sufficient proof of their being Good Sportsmen. They parted willingly with any of their Masks, except those of the Human Face - when any of these were Sold, it was done in a clandestine manner, as if ashamed of being seen -

Tuesday 7th. The Resolution's Foremast was taken out and got on shore to be repaired.

The 8th and 9th. had a heavy Gale of Wind from the Eastward, on which account we carried out another Anchor. in this Gale, the Resolution Sprung the head of her Mizzen Mast, which they afterwards got out, and were obliged to make a new one; here being plenty of good Trees for

[Vol.2 - page 129]

1778

April Coast of America. In K. Georges Sound -

that purpose. Each Ship provided themselves with a Spare Topmast and what other Spars they wanted.

Saturday 18th. The Resolution got her Foremast in, and 2 or 3 days after her new Mizzen Mast.

Monday 20th. An Indian who was admitted into Captain Cooks Cabin, contrived to carry off his Watch, and left the Ship before it was Missed - his Canoe being seen alongside of us, Notice was sent, and on Search, the Watch found in a Chest in the Canoe.

Captain Cook went this Morning, with both Ship's Cutters up the Sound and returned in the Afternoon. This same day, 2 old fashioned Silver Table Spoons, supposed to be Spanish, were bought of the Indians alongside the Resolution, for a Pewter Wash Hand Bason.

Wednesday 22d. The Resolution's Pinnace and our great Cutter, went to the Town on the West Side of the Entrance into the Sound, to cut Grass.

This Town stands at the back of a Sandy beach, in the bottom of a fine little Cove, where is good Anchorage: and consists of 2 Rows of Houses, one behind the other, in a line with the Water Side. Their Houses are built of

[Vol.2 - page 130]

1778

In King Georges Sound -

Wood, each being one large Room, 7 or 8 feet high (on the inside) within. One Side is somewhat higher than the other, and covered with loose broad planks l(a)ying across, that reach from Side to Side, and move occasionally, to admit light or Shut out the Weather. The Entrance is in a Nook, formed by a break in the Side, one part projecting out a little and continued, so as to overlap the other, making a short narrow Lane.

Over one of the Houses (was) were placed lengthways, 3 large Spars; the middle, stout enough for a great Ships Mainmast: this was supported at one end, by an enormous Image of a Man's Head/

Within Doors they are as uncleanly as in their persons, heaps of stinking fish bones and dirt lying in every corner. At this time they were drying great quantities of small fish, that hung up in their Houses for the benefit of the Smoke. On the beach were Stages for drying larger Fish; at present unoccupied. They boil their Victuals in wooden boxes, by throwing in red hot Stones. At the back of the Town, was a large Plantation of Cherry Trees, Gooseberry and Currant Bushes, Rasberries and Strawberries: unluckily for us, none of them in season.

The Indians were very hospitable, and seemed to

[Vol.2 - page 131]

1778

April Coast of America. in K. Georges Sound

take more pains to avoid giving offence, than when alongside our Ships.

Our Opinions concerning the number of Inhabitants in this Town, differed widely from 500 to 2000. The Canoes on the Beach were counted 95.

besides this, we saw 4 other Towns, in different parts of the Sound.

Friday 24th. being ready for Sea, Struck the Tents, and got every thing on board. The Wood here is all Pine and being full of Turpentine, consumed away very fast; on which account we took as much as we possibly could.

This forenoon, an Indian alongside of the Resolution was Shot [^](with small Shot) in the backside, for some unfair dealing - four Canoes of the same party, immediately left the Cove, threatning that they would soon return. The Indians in the other Canoes, gave themselves no concern about the Matter.

With respect to Traffic: Iron, Brass and Copper were the Articles on which the Indians set the greatest Value. Lead, Pewter and Tin, went off well at the beginning, but soon fell into disrepute. Any Crack or flaw in Iron, lowered the value of it considerably, which makes it probable

[Vol.2 - page 132]

King Georges Sound.

they beat it out cold. On their part, they brought Deer, Wolf, Fox and Bear Skins; and Furs which we suppose to be chiefly of the Sea Beaver. They likewise supplied us with Fish, and a quantity of Oil for burning was bought, sufficient to serve both Ships a Twelve Month. They keep their Trade in double Boxes, one going over and inclosing the other. Many of our people provided themselves with Bear Skin Coats, which are excellent for keeping out Rain.

I have inserted a few Words as a Specimen of their Language -

A Woman -	Slootsmar	one -	Sowark
The Hair -	apsoop	two -	atla
Eyes -	Cassa	three -	catsa
Nose -	Neetsaw	four -	mo
Lips -	Ethlooks	five -	Sochar
Teeth -	Chichicheah	six -	nops
Spittle -	Tanksheetle	seven -	attapo
Water -	Lucksheet	eight -	attaquash
to Exchange -	Markook	Ten -	Heyya
Iron (a Hatchet) -	tsekimineco		
Brass or Copper -	Geopoazs		
Beads -	Joquay		
a Sword -	Kotays		
a Bow -	Moostata		
Give me -	Clyomay		
No -	Wick		

[Vol.2 - page 133]

1778

April Coast of America. from K. Georges Sound.

Saturday 25th. took up the Best Bower Anchor, and Cast off some of our Shore fasts. As we hove up the Anchor, all the Canoes in the Cove, assembled together, and Sung us a parting Song, flourishing the Saws, Swords, Hatchets and other things they had got from us.

One man was mounted on a Stage of loose Boards, supported by the Indians nearest it, and danced with different Masks on; at one time resembling a Man, and at others, a Bird or a Beast.

The Wind being unsteady were obliged to lay fast till next day.

Sunday 26th. in the Afternoon having light Variable Winds, Towed the Ships out of the Cove. at 6 a Breeze Sprung up from the NW. At 8 were abreast the Western point of the Entrance into the Sound. The Wind soon after Shifting to ESE with Squally Weather, Stood to the Southward all Night, for an Offing. Next Morning seeing nothing of the land, Bore away to the NW -

[Vol.2 - Page 134]

April Coast of America -

28th and 29th. A Strong Gale from the SEt.

30th. Moderate Weather - Wind the Same. Still continuing our Course towards the NW

May

Friday 1st. At Sunset, the Resolution made the Signal for seeing the Land to the NNE. Ran to the Northward all Night -

Saturday 2d. at 4 in the Morning, within 3 Leagues of the Land, which bore NWÿN to EÿN. An Uneven Mountainous Country; the Hills covered with Snow, The Lower parts Woody. Running alongshore all day NW & NWBW pr Compass. Passed many deep Bays Saw large flocks of Geese, Duck &c. -

At Noon Lat'de. Obs'd. 56ÿ..54' No.
Long'de. in 224..06 Et. a Greenwich -
Var'tn. 23..14 Et. taken PM -

At 2 in the Afternoon were abreast a remarkable flat top'd Mountain, standing on a point that projects into the Sea.

Sunday 3d. At 4 in the Morning; passed an Opening, that appeared like the mouth of a River -

This forenoon the Resolution's Boat came on board - learnt they had Sprung a Leak, the Night after leaving King George's Sound; which made them keep their Hand-pumps constantly at Work for 2 Days, when it stopped of itself -

had Soundings at 4 Leagues off Shore - 60 fathoms -
Lat'de. at Noon 58ÿ..18' No.
Long'de. 222ÿ..20' Et.

[Vol.2 - page 135]

1778

May Coast of America - from King Georges Sound -

4th. 5th. 6th. & 7th. running alongshore to the NW, with light Variable Winds and Clear Weather -

the 7th. at Noon. 2 High Mountains which we take to be Mount Elias, bore NWBN distant 18 Leagues this was first seen at 4 in the Morning on the 4th. being then 46 Leagues distant.

Lat'de. Obs'd. 59ÿ..25' No.
Long'de. 219..11 Et.
Var'tn. 26ÿ^o Et.

8th. and 9th. got very little forwards.

Sunday 10th. Lat'de. at Noon 59ÿ..51. No.
Long'de. 216..06 Et.
Var'tn. 27ÿ Et.

An Island in sight to the Westward, between which and a low point of the Main Land to the NW of us, we attempted to pass. Not getting near enough before dark, Stood backwards and forwards all Night - had Soundings from 60 fathoms at 4 Leagues off Shore, to 30 fathoms at 2 Leagues distant. Soft muddy bottom.

Monday 11th. At 4 in the Morning Mount Elias bore NEÿE distant 33 Leagues. This was the last we saw of Mount Elias, being afterwards hid by the Clouds: but from its height above the Horizon, there is reason to conclude, it might be seen in Clear Weather at not much less than 60 Leagues distance -

Made Sail towards the Channel between the Island mentioned yesterday and the Main Land. The Wind baffling us, at 5 Bore away for the South point of the Island; off which, at half a mile distance, lays a high Rock -

[Vol.2 - Page 136]

[Chart] Sandwich Sound

In the Bay where the Resolution careened
High Water at 11æ AM in the full and Change Days.
Tide Rises 8 feet 4 inches pr Mr. Baily's Observations

Where the Boats went up, it was found to be low Water at 8 in the Evening of the 17th. and suposing it to be High Water at ° past 2 next morning, will give 9 H. 52 M. for the Time of High Water after the Moon passes the Meridian.

[Vol.2 - page 137]

1778
May Coast of America - from K. Georges Sound -

11th. The Resolutions Boat went on Shore at the Island, and our Small Cutter was out Shooting Sea fowl all day - being little wind, did not get abrest the South point, till 8 at Night.

Tuesday 12th. Wind from E to SE. a fresh breeze -
Lat'de. at Noon 60..08 No.
Long'de. 213..22 Et.
A point on the Main land bearing S 88 Wt. 4 Leagues.

At y past Noon found this point and the back Land seperated: the North part of the back Land when in one with the point, bearing West pr Compass. Stood for the Opening - at 3 past a small Island on the West Side of the passage. It coming on foggy dirty Weather, hauld up for a Harbour in the Eastern Shore, where a 6 we Anchoed near the South point, off the Mouth of a Cove, in 12 fathoms, Muddy bottom.

Bearings -
Outer points of the Harbour S7W & NNWy W.
Upper part of the Harbour NNE°E
Upper part of the Cove SEbE 1 mile
A Cluster of Rocks NWbN.
Lat'd. 60..16 No.
Long'd. 212..58 Et.
Var'tn. 27..30 Et.

The outer points of the Harbour lay NWBN and SEbS - distant asunder about 4 Miles.

At Sunset, 2 large Canoes came over from a low point of Land on the Opposite Side of the Harbour. They stopped at some distance from the Ships, and gave us a Song in much the same kind of Stile as the singing we heard at K. Georges Sound. On coming nearer, a Man whom we suposed to be Chief of the Party, stood fronting us, with

[Vol.2 - page 138]

1778
May Coast of America - Sandwich Sound

12th. his Arms extended Strait out. They remained with us about 2 Hours. None of them ventured on board, nor did we understand any thing they said except the Word Toquay, which signifies Beads both here and at K. G. Sound. in the Night, a Small Canoe with two men kept paddling round the Ships, and departed before Sunrise.

Wednesday 13th. At 10 in the forenoon got under Sail, being directed by Capt'n. Cook to run up the Harbour, he intending to look for a more convenient place to examine his Leaks
Wind SW. Stood backwards and forwards waiting for the Resolution, whose Anchor held so fast, that they found it difficult to get out of the Ground. At Noon She got under Sail - the Wind coming round to the SE,

James Burney - Journey on HMS Discovery, 10 Feb. 1776 - 24 Aug. 1779

Safe 1/64; Safe 1/79

Captain Cook altered his Plan and we Stood out of the Harbour, and Steered to the Northward. A fresh Gale with thick hazy Weather and rain; which prevented our seeing whether or not we were running into a Clear Sea.

At 3 Saw more Land to the No. and NNE - and at 5 having run 9 Leagues to the Northward, Hauld up to the NE, between 2 points that bore nearly WNW and ESE of each other pr Compass; distance asunder 8 Miles. At 6 Saw the Land ahead

[Vol.2 - page 139]

May in Sandwich Sound -

and on each Bow, that appeared broken and disjointed, forming deep Bays and Inlets. till 9 Turning up into a Bay near the SE'termost of the 2 points, under double Reefed Topsails, when we Anchoed in 12 fathoms, muddy bottom.

The outer points of the Bay NNE and WSW -
A Small Island - N 50 E æ of a mile -
Upper part of the Bay S 61 E 2 or 3 miles
Outer point of the opposite Shore N 78 W -
Lat'de. 60ÿ..44 No.
Long'de. 213..04 Et.
Var'tn. 27..50 Et.

Some Canoes came into the Bay from the SW, and went alongside the Resolution.

Thursday 14th. Early in the Morning, we were visited by 2 Indians in a small Canoe, who seeing only 3 or 4 people on Deck, went to the Resolution, where were many other Canoes, who immediately left her and all repaired to us. on entering the Ship, one Man begun by throwing the Jolly Boats Rudder overboard to those in the Canoes. Our people offering to lay hold of him, he drew a long Knife from under his Jacket and very composedly walked towards the Gangway, seizing a Tin pot that lay in his Way; Whilst his Companions equally willing to profit by So fair an Occasion, were endeavouring to knock the Iron-Hoops from off some Casks. The Alarm was immediately given to our People below, some of whom appearing with Cutlasses, the Indian relinquished his second prize and hastened into his Canoe, as

[Vol.2 - page 140]

1778
May Coast of America - in Sandwich Sound

4th. did the rest, describing how much longer our Knives were than theirs, by holding one of their Arms at full length. They all left the Ship carrying the Rudder with them, which was not thought worth making a bustle after; and we had not a Single Canoe about us the rest of the day, although the Resolution was surrounded with them: and there they broke all the Glass Scuttles round the Ship, that were within reach of their Paddles.

It continuing dirty Weather, Moored the Ship -
The Resolution on a Careen, examining her Leaks. Saw some Animals running along the Beach, barking, but could not distinguish whether Dogs or Wolves.

Friday 15th. The Resolution continuing on a Careen, hoisted out the Launch and compleated our Water. This forenoon saw Land to the Westward, which the foggy Weather had hid from us when we came in.

Since leaving King Georges Sound, the Resolution has outsailed us, which we attribute to being too deep by the Head. On this account we got 2 of our Guns down the After Hold, and Scrubbed the Ships bottom.

[Vol.2 - page 141]

May in Sandwich Sound

15th. In the Afternoon, some Indians visited us, who mindfull of the late quarrel, threw a Stick with Birds Wings tied about it into our Boat alongside; and till it was taken into the Ship would not venture to fasten their Canoes.

This Custom is mentioned in the Account of the Russian Voyages; the Stick so bedecked, being there called a Calumet and said to be a peace Offering. These Indians all come from the SW, no one inhabiting the Bay we are in.

Their Canoes are only slight wooden Frames, covered with pieces of Whale Skin neatly sewed together. The Large Canoes are open for carrying a Number of People. The Small, which are for fishing, carry only one or two men, and are close covered all round except where the people sit, which is a round hole hooped: and to prevent any Water getting in, they wear Jackets made of Bladders, which tie close round their Necks and the bottom tucks under the Hoop. They paddle very fast and are well provided with Fish Spears, &c.

The Inhabitants of this part of the Coast, differ greatly from those of King Georges Sound. Their Language is even more unintelligible, the Words

[Vol.2 - page 142]

1778

May Coast of America in Sandwich Sound -

15th. being so huddled upon one another, that it is difficult to catch them. Their Dress is partly the same, viz, the flax Cloth and Wicker Hats. At King George Sound they wear the Skins loose; here they make Jackets with Sleeves, Boots and Handsoons. But what distinguishes these people from any we have hitherto Seen, is, their under lips being all Slit in a line parallel to the Mouth and about æ of an Inch lower: through this they thrust their Tongues, or pieces of bone in imitation of Teeth. We found plenty of Iron amongst them, and blue European Beads, which were more valued than Iron or any thing we could produce.

They gave us to understand that there were two Ways to the Sea; the one South and the other North, which latter would take us 2 Days and Nights before we came into the Open Sea. Their Method of communicating this intelligence, was, by turning round with their Hands closed, and opening them only in the direction of the Passages. The Northern passage they described to be round a point of Land bearing N 78ÿ W pr Compass from ^ (the place) where we lay.

Saturday 16th. The Resolution Righted, having repaired her Leaks. Boats away Shooting all Day. Wild Geese and Ducks in in great Numbers

[Vol.2 - page 143]

in Sandwich Sound -

but not easy come at. The Country hereabouts produces plenty of Wood, chiefly Firs, and of a very moderate Size - The Ground as yet is nowhere cleared of the Snow.

Sunday 17th. At 5 in the Morning, got under Sail and stood over to the Westward. A light Easterly Wind and fair Weather - having run 5 Miles out, Saw Land in every direction except the Opening we entered at, bearing SSEÿE; and the appearance of another Outlet, bearing from SÿE to SæW: The Land on every side full of deep Bays and Inlets. At 9 were about the point past which, according to our Indian intelligence, we were to find a Passage to the Northward - it falling little Wind, the flood set us towards a point half a League farther to the WNW, with Rocks just above Water, laying off ° of a mile - The Resolution being in Shore of us, sent our Cutters to assist in towing her off. A Light Breeze Springing up, Shot past the Rocky Point and deepened our Soundings from 5 fathoms hard bottom, abrest the point, to 15 fms half a mile to the Westward. Opened a deep Sound, up which we kept turning with Variable baffling Winds, till 2 in the Afternoon, keeping a Boat a head: Soundings

[Vol.2 - page 144]

1778

May Coast of America - in Sandwich Sound

James Burney - Journey on HMS Discovery, 10 Feb. 1776 - 24 Aug. 1779

Safe 1/64; Safe 1/79

Mitchell Library, State Library of NSW

17th. irregular from 46 to 12 fathoms. At 2, Anchored in 19 fathoms muddy bottom, in a Bay formed by Islands on the East Side of the Sound.

Bearings -

The Rocky point S $\frac{1}{2}$ E about half a Lge.

Western point of the Low Island NbW^oW abt. 2 miles

A Small Island ENE $\frac{1}{2}$ E $\frac{1}{2}$ of a mile

A Bluff Head Land S 69 $\frac{1}{2}$ W to S 81 W -

Lat'de. 60 $\frac{1}{2}$..53' No.

Long'de. 212..49 Et.

Var'n. 27 $\frac{1}{2}$ Et.

At 3 Our Cutter was sent with the Resolution's Boats to Search for a Passage.

At Midnight they returned, having been several Miles without seeing the End of the Sound. The Eastern Shore near the Entrance was found to consist of Islands, with passages through towards the Bay we last came from. further up, the Sound divided into branches leading in different directions. The Tide was tried in Shore, and in the Middle of the Stream, and at both places the Ebb found to set to the Northwards, though it is certain, this morning when we came in, the flood set was to the North. However no fair conclusion can be drawn from the Course of the Tide amongst such broken Land, where point projects beyond point and so many different Channels communicate with each other.

Nevertheless, the report of the Indians and our Boats not finding the End, makes a thoroughfare highly

[Vol.2 - page 145]

Sandwich Sound

probable, which after all perhaps lead to the Southwest again - if into a North Sea, we Stand a fair chance of finding a wider Passage more to the Westward; as it is hardly to be supposed that two large Tracts of Land are seperated only by a Labyrinth like this.

A Passage directly to the North would be of great Advantage to us, for besides hastening our Arrival to the Scene of business, our Stay there might be lengthened with the less hazard, from having so short a Cut to return by.

The Wind coming Northerly, which was fair for Running out to Sea; this business was given up for fear of expending too much time -

Monday 18th. At 3 in the morning, Weighd.

Stood to the Southward for the Westermost of the 2 Openings - to the whole of this little mediterranean Sea, with we have been examining since the 12th. Capt'n. Cook gave the Name of Sandwich Sound.

In the Afternoon the Wind came round to the SSW. At Sunset were abreast a Bluff Head, the Northermost part of the Land between the two Openings - about 6 miles to the Westward of this, are a Cluster of low Rocks - between these Rocks and the Bluff we Stood backwards and forwards all Night, having

[Vol.2 - page 146]

1778

May

Sandwich Sound

Soundings, from 53 to 35 fathoms, muddy bottom -

The Land between the Openings is a long Island; The East Side is the West Shore of the Opening through which we entered Sandwich Sound; and the West Side of the long Island, makes the Eastern Shore of the passage we are now going out by.

Tuesday 19th. At $\frac{1}{2}$ past 4 in the morning Stood to the Southward - Wind ENE. kept within 2 or 3 miles of the Eastern Shore - past a low Island that lays nearly in Midchannel to the South of which is a Smaller Island

with a number of Rocks - Many lesser Islands in different directions. The Land to the Westward, broken and full of Inlets. At Noon little wind - our Cutter ahead towing. Soundings all the Morning from 30 to 22 fathoms Mud.

Lat'de. Obs'd. 60 \ddot{y} ..10' No.
Long'de. 212..12 Et.

Light Airs all the Afternoon. At \ddot{y} past 8 Anchord, having gained but 3 miles since Noon.

Bearings -
A High Island in the Outer Entrance of the Channel S 31 W to S 54 W.
dist. 3 or 4 Leagues -
A point on the West Shore WBS
Our distance from the nearest East Shore 2 miles -
25 fms Mud -

[Vol.2 - Insert for page 148]

[Chart]

Chart with the Ships Track,
from making the Coast of America
after leaving K. Georges Sound
to leaving Sandwich Sound.
[Vol.2 - page 148]

Coast of America. from Sandwich Sound

Wednesday 20th. it continuing little Wind with Rainy Weather, lay fast till 10 in the forenoon; when a breeze Sprung up from the NNE and we got under Sail. At 2 in the Afternoon, were abreast the High Island in the Entrance, between which and the East Shore, the Channel is about 5 miles wide. At 7 were clear out in the Open Sea again.

Saw a continuation of the Main land to the Westward as far as SWæS pr Compass, which has the same broken appearance as the Land in Sandwich Sound. Stood to the SSW alongshore, not coming nearer than within 6 Leagues.

Friday 22d. The Wind having come round to the Westward, had thrown us off Shore. At Noon were 14 Leagues distant from the Main Land. More Land in sight to the SW, which appears detached from the Main. distant from us 8 or 10 Leagues.

Lat'de. at Noon 58 \ddot{y} ..22' No.
Long'de. 208..42 Et.
Var'tn. 26 \ddot{y} Et.

23d. and 24th. Turning to Windward, endeavouring to get in with the Main. Wind Westerly with Squally Weather.

Monday 25th. Wind NE. At 8 in the Morning were within 2 Leagues of the SW Land, which proves to be an

[Vol.2 - page 149]

May 1778
Coast of America from Sandwich Sound

25th. Island, with Land to the West and South of it, that has much the appearance of Islands. Stood to the NNW.

At Noon Lat'de Obs'd. 58 \ddot{y} ..39' No.
Long'de. 207..52 Et.
Var'tn. 26 \ddot{y} ^o Et.

A Cluster of Small Islands bearing NNW to NWbW

dist. 5 to 6 Leagues. and the Main Land in sight NbEæ Et.
find a Tide has set us to the Northward this Morning -

At 4 in the Afternoon, were amongst the Small Islands, endeavouring to pass through between them. The Wind baffling us, and a Strong irregular Tide running, were obliged to bear away to the Westward of them. Saw more Land to the WNW, in which direction we Stood all Night.

Tuesday 26th. Wind Northerly, a fresh Gale and Clear Weather, with a great Swell. At 8 in the Morning, were within 7 or 8 miles of a Mountain that stands on the North point of a Bay in the Western Land. By the South point of the Bay are 2 high Mountains. Tackd and Stood to the Eastward.

At Noon. Lat'de. Obs'd. 59.06 No. The Cluster of Small Islands bearing from East to ESE pr Compass. dist. about 5 Leagues. Land to the Eastward, which is a continuation of the Land we coasted from Sandwich Sound, bearing N 27½ E to ENE: and Mountainous Land in Sight to the Westward as far as NNW. from NNW to N 27½ Et. no Land to be seen, which

[Vol.2 - page 150]

Examining an Inlet -

with the Swell from the North, makes us hope to find the Continent end here. Stood over to the NE till 6, when we were in the mouth of a Bay, whose outer points bear of each other N 52½ W and S 52½ Et. about 5 miles asunder - being in a line between these points, at half a League distant from the Southermost, had Soundings at 23 fathoms, Sand: The Cluster of Small Islands bearing S 18 W to S 19 Et. Tackd, and kept Turning to Windward all Night.

Wednesday 27th. had light Variable Winds - got but little to the Northward. Lat'de. at Noon 59½.21' No. In the Afternoon, Saw Land all round to the Northward except from North to NNW which yet keeps the Appearance of a fair Sea - In the Night saw Fires on the East Shore -

Thursday 28th. at 6 in the morning, finding we lost ground considerably, having but little Wind, and the Tide against us; both Ships Anchor'd: We in 25 fathoms black Sand and broken Shells - luckily with our Best Bower Anchor, as we found the Tide running 4 Knots. The Resolution having let go their Stream Anchor, the Cable parted, and they were obliged

[Vol.2 - page 151]

1778

May

Coast of America.

Examining an Inlet -

28th. to Anchor with one of their Bowers.

Bearings -

The Eastern Shore, Low level Land -
about 7 miles distant bearing from NNE to S 84 Et. -
to the South of this falls in a deep Bay, behind which,
High Land in sight extending to S 35 Et. -
Our distance from the Western Shore 6 to 8 Leag's.
The Northermost part in Sight N 24 Wt.
which makes a great extent of clear Horizon
to the Northward, by two Points, than we had Yesterday.

At 10^oH Slack Water. Weighd and came to Sail -
at 11 the Resolution Anchor'd again - her Boats endeavouring to recover their Stream Anchor.

At Noon we Anchor'd in 25 fms, Sand and broken Shells, half a League, to the North of the Resolution, and about 3 miles North of our last birth. distant 8 or 9 miles from the Eastern Shore.

It being doubtfull whether we might not be in the entrance of a large River, the Water was Weighd at ^o past 10 in the forenoon, when the Tide from the North Slackd, and found not to differ from the Water at Sea.

Lat'de. Obs'd. 59^y.52' No.
Long'de. 207.43 Et.
Var'tn. taken AM 26^y.00' Et.

in the Afternoon the Tide from the South Slackd at 4H.45M. The Resolutions Boats creeping for the Stream Anchor, but without Success. At 8 a Breeze from the Eastward.
At 9 got under Sail - at 10 the Wind Shifted to the Northward - a fresh Gale.
All Night turning to Windward -

[Vol.2 - page 152]

Examining an Inlet -

Friday 29th. At 5 in the morning Anchor'd in 25 fathoms, Shingles; having gained about 6 Leagues to the NNE this Tide. The Channel here about 10 Leagues across. The East Shore a low level Country, bearing from N 29 E. to S 26 Et. dist. 7 or 8 miles. High Mountainous Land beyond the low Land. No'ermost Land in sight on the West Shore N20^yWt.

At 7 the Tide running at 4^y Knots. Slack Water not till near Noon, which may be owing to the Strong Northerly Wind.

At ^y past Noon, got under Sail. Working to Windward till ^o past 6, when we Anchor'd in 19 fathoms, black gravelly bottom, 8 or 9 miles distant from the East Shore; Rocks half way bearing NEBE^yE.
The Northermost Land on either side bearing N9^yWT. & N21^yWt.
A low Island near the West Shore N54^y W to S77^yW about 4 Leagues distant.
Lat'de. 60.22 No.

Saturday 30th. At 2 in the morning, Weigh'd and Turned till 7, when we Anchor'd 14 faths. Shingly bottom - 7 or 8 miles from the East Shore which continues a level flat Country. The Low Island SW^yS; and a point of low Land on the West Shore, WNW.

Lat'de. Obs'd. 60^y.37' No.
Long'de. 208.15 Et.
Var'n. 29^y Et'erly.

Some Canoes came half way off from the East Shore, but were carried astern by the Tide.

[Vol.2 - page 153]

1778 Coast of America -
May Examining an Inlet -

30th. At 2 Afternoon got under Sail. Wind still Northerly - at 4 were between 2 points where the Channel is but 3 Leagues broad - all the West Shore to the North of this is low Land - both Sides covered with Wood.

At ^y past 8, Anchor'd, a League from the West Shore, in 20 fms. bottom of hard Clay.
The East Shore about 4 Leagues distant. The Northermost continuation of either side N14E and NE. distant high Land in sight to the NEt. Lat'de. 61^y.01' No.

Sunday 31st. from 3 in the morning till 9, under Sail: when we Anchor'd in 19 fathoms 5 or 6 Leagues to the NEt'ward. of our last birth. A point which then bore N14^yE 4 miles distant, now S 30^y W 4 Leagues - Land in Sight all round the NE and NW quarters of the Horizon, except a Small Opening in the High Land to the Eastward, bearing N 84 Et. A Low Island N64^yE to N 74 Et. - find the Course of the Tide very irregular, Shifting from NNE to East.

Lat'de. Obs'd. at Noon. 61^y.12' No.

At 2 in the Afternoon, both Ships Cutters were sent to the NNE, where is some appearance of a Passage between the low Land and the high back Land. At 3 past 3 Slack Water. A Rippling with 2 different Coloured Waters crossed the Ship: a bucket full of each being drawn, the Clearer Stream of the two was found salt, and the muddy water fresh and drinkable -

[Vol.2 - page 154]

Examining an Inlet -

31st. At 4 Weighd, and at 7, Anchoed, 3 Leagues East of our last birth, in 19 fathoms black Sand - The Opening in the High Land bearing N 20½ Et.

Several Canoes about us. Much the same kind of people we saw at Sandwich Sound - Their lower lip Slit and ornamented the same. They are likewise well stocked with blue Beads, Iron Knives and Copper. Some of their Small Canoes were managed by double paddles.

June

Monday 1st. At 1 in the morning the Cutters returned; having found an Inlet in the low Land, which they entered but saw not the end of - this Inlet first runs to the North 4 or 5 miles and then turns to the NE, The Water when they first entered was somewhat fresh, but Salt as they advanced; occasioned probably by the rising of the Tide, which then run strong up with them. At the highest part they went, which was about 3 miles; the depth of Water was 18 fathoms, and the Channel near 2 miles broad -

At 4 Weighd with little Wind - at 7 having drifted 6 or 7 miles in a direct line for the opening in the High Land, the Entrance of the Inlet in the low Land bore N 29½ Et. being then in one with the North End of an Island about a League distant from us.

At 8 the Cutters were sent towards the Eastern Opening -

[Vol.2 - page 155]

1778

June

Coast of America

Examining an Inlet.

1st. A fresh breeze Springing up at NE, turned to the Eastward till 11, having Soundings from 16 to 9 fathoms - and then Anchoed in 11 faths. Soft black Sand -

The Opening in the High Land ENE½ E . dist. from the Entrance about 7 miles.

Lat'de. 61½.03' No.

Long'de. 209.27 Et.

Var'tn. 30½ Et.

The Cutters making but little Ground, a Signal was made and they returned.

In the Afternoon, the Weather becoming much clearer than it has been these 2 or 3 days past, Saw more plainly into the Opening in the high Land, which now has the appearance of a deep narrow Sound - the entrance is not a League in breadth, and does not seem to widen within - this, by its direction, may probably communicate with Sandwich Sound: as to the Opening in the low Land to the Northward, the narrowness of the Channel forbids any great expectations: yet there was in its favour, besides the depth of Water, this Circumstance; that from the NbW to the NW points of the Horizon, no high Land was seen at the back of the low Land, which was a Swampy flat; though in almost every other direction, there was Land in sight of a height sufficient to be seen

[Vol.2 - page 156]

in an Inlet -

at 15 or 20 Leagues distance -

Lieut't. King was sent with the Cutters of both Ships, to the low East Land, which he took possession of for his Majesty.

At 4 got under Sail, being bound back for Sea again - tried Soundings as we hove up and found 6½ fathoms, which is above 4 faths. less depth than when we Anchord - Stood to the Westward against the young Flood till ½ past 6, when finding we began to lose Ground, Anchord in 7 faths. black Sand, about a League from the low East Land bearing N 80½ Et.

At 7 the Cutters returned. They met several of the Natives, of whom was bought a small Quantity of fresh Salmon and a Dog.

Half an hour before Midnight, Weighd with the Ebb - a light breeze Southerly -

Tuesday 2d. at ½ past 4, the Ebb being quite spent, Anchord in 17 fthms, a bottom of reddish Clay - about 5 miles from the West Shore - The low Land on the Eastern Shore in Sight from N 61½ E to S1½W.

At 10æ H High Water. Got under Sail -

At Noon Lat'de. Obs'd. 61..00 No. -

till 2 Turning to the Southward, when the Resolution

[Vol.2 - page 157]

1778

June Coast of America in an Inlet -

2d. Resolution got aground on a Shole, and we Anchord in 17 fms, black Sand, nearly in mid Channel - Bearings -

So'ermost Low Land in Sight =

on the East Shore S 24½ E

the West Shore S 12 W

Sholes from N50½E to S 20 W. the nearest part 2 miles distant.

All the South part dry at low Water -

The Resolution bearing N 74 E. 2 miles -

Lat'de 60½..56' No.

Long'de. 208..21 E

Var'tn. 29½ Et.

At 6, the Resolution floated, and came to an Anchor in clear ground. We Saw nothing of these Sholes coming up.

At Midnight Weighd. Wind southerly. Stood over to the West Shore to keep clear of the Flats: having before, kept that side close on board in this Reach.

Wednesday 3d. at 6 in the morning, Anchord in 21 fathoms Stoney bottom - being half a League distant from the South point of the continued low Land on the West Shore, it bearing S75½W. and the body of a low Island South -

Many Canoes came off to us with Salmon, and Fish somewhat resembling, but larger than, Smelts, bought some of their Bows and Arrows. The Bows are strengthened with the Sinews of Animals, and the Bowstring made of the Same. Their Arrows are headed, some with Slate and some with Copper.

[Vol.2 - page 158]

[Chart]

Track along the Coast, from 21st. of May to the 15th of June - with a Chart of the Inlet.

High Water when we Anchord the Forenoon of the 28th. at 3 Hours after the Moon passes the Meridian
Lat'd. 59½..52 No.

High Water near the Island at the Head of the Inlet
5 Hours after [moon symbol] souths -

[Vol.2 - page 159]

1778

June Coast of America - in the Inlet -

3d. At 11 Weighd. Wind Southerly - a light breeze -
At Noon. Lat'de. Obs'd. 60..41 No.

At 1 Shoaled from 13 faths. to 6 fathoms Rocky bottom.
The low Island then bearing South to SSWÿ W. 5 miles -
Many riplings and smooth patches on the Water, that looked suspicious. Bore away to the North and afterwards to the NE. kept a Boat a head Sounding till we deepened to 15 fathoms; then hauld on a Wind. A ÿ past 6 Anchord in 18 fathoms, Stoney bottom; the flood having made Strong against us.
The Island bearing from WbN to SWbW. 3 Leagues distant.

At Midnight Weighd. Turning to the Soutward with the Ebb -

Thursday 4th. in the Morning, observed Smoke to issue from a Mountain bearing SW of us. This, from the Mistiness of the Weather, had escaped our Notice, as we came up -
At 7, Anchord nearly in mid Channel - 28 fms. Shingles.
The low Island NNW to NWbW
The burning Mountain S 49 Wt.
At Noon Lat'de.Obs'd. 60ÿ..10' No. Got under Sail -

At ÿ past 6 Anchord. 24 fms. Stoney bottom - dist. from the East Shore about 7 miles.
The burning Mountain S 69ÿ W.
At Midnight Weighed again -

Friday 5th. Stood to the South, with light Variable Winds till 6, when we Anchord 7 or 8 miles distant from the East Shore, about half a mile South of our first

[Vol.2 - page 160]

1778

June Coast of America - from the Inlet -

5th. first Anchoring place the morning of the 28th. when the Resolution lost her Stream Anchor. Most part of the forenoon, the Resolutions Boats looking after the Anchor. At 11 Weighd; Wind WSW - Stood backwards and forwards; the Boats still in search, but without success. At 1 gave it up, & made Sail to the Southward - at 7 in the Evening Anchord -
The So'ermost of the East Shore in sight, which is high broken Land S 41ÿÿ Et. 7 or 8 miles -
The Cluster of small Rocky Islands we passed by, the 25th. bearing S10ÿE to S32ÿEt.
half an hour after Midnight got under Sail again -

Saturday 6th. At 8 in the Morning, ran by the East of a Cluster of Small Islands, and Stood for the broken Land to the Southward. in the Evening, little Wind -
Caught a great many Halibut.

Sunday 7th. At Noon - an Island of the South Cape of the Inlet we have been examining, bore N 26 W 3 Leagues - this is the Eastermost of the Land we first Saw to the SW May 22d.

Lat'de.Obs'd. 58ÿ..03' No.
Long'de. 207..53 Et.
Var'tn. 26ÿ Et.

All the ensuing Week, had contrary Winds, with much foggy Weather - Turning to the So'ward.

[Vol.2 - page 161]

Coast of America

Sunday 14th. At Noon, were 2 or 3 Leagues to the SE of an Island, the Eastermost of a Groupe, laying about 5 Leagues distant from what we imagine to be the Continent -

Lat'de. Obs'd. 56 \ddot{y} ..23' No.

Long'de. 205.. 53 Et.

Var'nt. 21..30 Et.

in the Evening the Wind came in to the Southward, and after to the SEt. ran all Night to the Westward, keeping an offing of 4 Leagues South of the Islands.

Monday 15th. At 3 in the Morning, past a low Island, the Westermost we saw of the Groupe. after 4 the Weather became hazy, and we lost sight of the Land - the Wind freshened. from 4 in the Morning to 3 in the Afternoon, ran 23 Leagues to the Westward; when the Resolution, being a mile a head of us, Saw Land to the NW about a League distant. Shortened Sail, and hauld on a Wind to the Southward. at 9 it fell little Wind - Saw more Land bearing SWbW - Light Airs with Calm all Night.

Tuesday 16th. At 3 in the Morning, Saw Land in each Quarter of the Compass; having in the fog, passed between the Land seen yesterday Afternoon and 2 Islands now bearing

E \ddot{y} S.

The Land to the Westward bearing WNW to SW \ddot{y} S, from

[Vol.2 - page 162]

1778

June Coast of America -

16th. from its extent, and Mountainous Appearance, is likely to be a continuation of the Land we have all along been coasting.

Directed our Course to the SW-ward along the Shore. Many Islands within us.

At Noon distance off Shore 7 or 8 Leagues -

Lat'de. 55 \ddot{y} ..50' No.

Long'de. 201.. 53 Et.

Var'tn. 20 \ddot{y} ..20' Et.

17th. and 18th. had very little Wind.

Friday 19th. A breeze from the NE with fair Weather.

Running through between the Main and a large Groupe of Islands.

Lat'de. at Noon 55 \ddot{y} ..19' No.

Long'de. 200 \ddot{y} Et.

At 6 in the Afternoon were past all the Islands, and abreast a Head Land, to the SSE of which {pr Compass} lay a small cluster of Rocks at 4 miles dist.

Having run through within the Rocks, Saw a large Fire on the Head Land, and soon after some Canoes came off and delivered us a Note, which we imagine to be in the Russian Language, dated at the beginning of 1778 - and in the last line but one was written 1776.

We immediately brought too, and made Signals to Speak with the Resolution. The Note was sent to Capt'n. Cook: but no one in either Ship were able to make out the meaning of any part except the dates.

At 8 Bore away and made Sail again -

[Vol.2 - page 163]

Coast of America

Saturday 20th. Wind Northerly. running along the Coast to the SW. Many Islands, Rocks and Breakers laying a considerable distance from the Main Land -

Sunday 21st. At Noon, were becalmed, 4 or 5 miles distant to the South of a low Island -

This part of the Coast is remarkable an account of 4 high Mountains on the Main being all at once in Sight - the Eastermost bearing pr Compass N 5ÿ W distant 22 Leagues - and the Westermost, which is a Volcano N 80ÿ W distant 19 Leagues -

Lat'de. Obs'd. 54ÿ..17' No.

Long'de. 197..31 Et.

Var'tn. 21ÿ Et.

The Calm continued most of the Afternoon, and we caught a great many Halibut; having Ground at 34 fms black Sand.

The 3 following days, had light Variable Winds with hazy Weather.

Wednesday 24th. Lat'de at Noon 54ÿ..11' No. Long'de. 195ÿ..37' E

The Main Land bearing from NNE to NWbN - and

Islands in sight from WBS to SWbW -

Thursday 25th. Wind Easterly - in the forenoon saw the 2 Westermost of the 4 Mountains - they having all been hid by the Haze, the 3 last days - at Noon were about 2 Leagues from the Eastermost of the Islands seen Yesterday.

Lat'de. 54ÿ..04' No.

Long'de. 195ÿ..18' Et.

[Vol.2 - page 164]

1778

June Amongst Islands -

25th. All the Afternoon, running along the South Side of the Islands, which lay in a Range NEbE and SWbW pr. Compass - at 8 in the Evening, the Westermost in sight bore W ° N - our distance from the nearest 7 or 8 miles. Foggy Weather coming on, with Rain - at 11 hauld on a Wind to the Southward -

Friday 26th. At ÿ past 1 in the Morning, having, as we imagined, increased our Offing 9 miles; bore away again to the Westward {WSW pr Compass}

At 5 heard a noise to the SW, like a Surf beating against Rocks - tried Soundings, and, fortunately finding Ground at 20 fathoms, both Ships, being within Hail of each other, immediately Clewed all their Sails up and came to an Anchor. Bottom black Sand.

At 7 The Fog clearing up a little, found ourselves near the East Side of a large Island which bore from N 3ÿ W to S 5ÿ Et. our distance from the Shore æ of a mile.

A Small Island bearing NbE a League distant -

Rocks and breakers from S ° E to S 39ÿ Et. half a League and 2 Rocks N 89ÿ E distant 2 or 3 miles.

We must have passed very close to these last, it being a dispute whether we came to the North or South of them. Our Course Steered is in favour of the first - the next days Observations make the latter probable as we found the Ships set by the Tide to the Northward.

Whichever Way we got here, certain it is, we could not have picked out a Safer birth than the one we so providentially hit upon.

Lat'de. 53ÿ..49' No.

Long'de. 193ÿ..48' Et.

Var'tn. 21ÿ..11' Et.

[Vol.2 - page 165]

June Amongst Islands

Wind from the SSE with a continuance of the dirty weather, lay fast all this day.
The Resolutions Pinnacle and our small Cutter were Sent on Shore to cut Grass.
Tracks of Foxes were Seen, but not signs of Inhabitants -

Saturday 27th. The Weather more Moderate and clearer.

At 7 in the Morning, got under Sail and ran to the Northward along the East Side of the nearest Land. At 9 falling Calm, Anchord in 30 fathoms black Sand and Shells, being about a League North of last Anchoring Birth - and a mile to the ENE of the Eastern Point of a large Sound. Islands in sight to the NW and NE. The Small one that bore NbE where we before lay; now NE½E a mile distant -

Saw a Number of Canoes towing a Whale into the Sound - and soon after; some came off to us.
Lat'de. Obs'd. 53½.52' No.

At 1 Afternoon got under Sail. Light variable Winds and fair Weather. Stood to the NW towards a Channel formed by the Land to the North of the large Sound, and the nearest Island to the NEt. of it.
At 7, finding a Tide against us, Anchord in 38 fathoms Sand and Shells, 5 or 6 miles to the NE of our last birth; and half a League distant from the Western point of the Sound, which bore N 65½ Wt.
The Tide very irregular all Night.

[Vol.2 - page 166]

1778

June Amongst Islands -

Sunday 28th. At 3 in the Morning got under Sail with little Wind. Boats ahead towing.

At 5, a fine breeze having Spring up at SSE, were in the Channel (above) before mentioned, which is about 2 miles wide - had Soundings in different parts from 25 to 40 fathoms - at 6 found the tide strong against us, and that we began to lose ground - at ½ past 6 The Resolution anchor'd, being to the NW of a ledge of Rocks that lay along the Larboard Shore, which we were then abreast of. Finding the bottom under us Rocky, Sheered over towards the NE Shore for better Anchorage: but before we reached Midchannel, the Stream carried us into a Strong Race that almost instantaneously hurried us back into the entrance of the Sound we had passed, in Spite of a Breeze with which we were then running 4 Knots through the Water. Our Great Cutter very narrowly escaped being dashed to pieces against the Ships Side by the violence of the Ripling. The Race Shifting, Stood over to the NE, and at ½ past 7, Anchored under the South Side of an Island in Smooth Water and Sheltered from the Tide - depth 32 fms. Sand and Shell.

The outer point on the West Side of the Channel N 83½ W. the Resolution at an Anchor between this point and the ledge of Rocks - distant from us about 5 miles. At 10 got under Sail. The

[Vol.2 - page 167]

in Samgonuther Harbour - Island of Nowanalascha -

28th. Tide from the North not being quite Spent, Stood backwards & forwards under the Island.

at Noon Slack Water and little Wind - the Resolution towing for a Harbour that turns Short in round the ledge of Rocks. At ½ past 1 we were nearly in the same place where the Resolution last Anchord. The Tide having made Strong, Anchord in 24 fathoms Rocky bottom, in a great Measure sheltered from the Tide by the ledge of Rocks, the outer part of which we brought to bear ESE - The Island that makes the East Shore of the Channel

N 19½ E to N 72½ E.

and the Entrance of the Harbour SEbE to SWbW -
distance off Shore, about half a mile -

At 2 the Resolution having Anchord in the Harbour, Sent her large Cutter to our Assistance. At 4 a breeze from the North and no Tide where we lay, though very Strong in mid Channel, Weighd and made Sail with Boats ahead Towing - at 6 Anchord in the Harbour in 11 fathoms Sandy bottom, and Moored.

The outer points of the Harbour NbW½W and N 12½ Et.

A Rocky point within the Harbour N.30½ Wt.
Distance from the West Side of the Harbour, 3 Cables length
Lat'de. 53..56' No.
Long'de. 193..38 E.
Var'tn. 20..40 Et.

This Island is called by the Natives Nowan Alascha and the Harbour we are now in, Samgonuther.

[Vol.2 - page 168]

1778

June Island Nowanalscha in Samgonuther Harbour.

Monday 29th. Employed all day compleating our Water. Many Canoes about us. These people do not paint their Faces, which makes them appear more cleanly and decent than any Indians we have yet seen on the American Coast. Their Lips are slit like the others; their Canoes and fishing Gear in the same fashion. We found them well acquainted with the Russians, some having Notes similar to the One we received the Afternoon of the 20th. They imitate the manners of Europeans in taking their Hats off and bowing when they come alongside, and in the whole of their behaviour observed a degree of modesty we have long been unaccustomed to meet with.

Tobacco, Snuff. Beads and Otaheite Cloth was here the Current Mony; for which they gave fish Spears, Lines, Hooks and a few other things of their own manufacture - Furs we saw none - perhaps the Russians had taken care of them -

Tuesday 30th. At 5 in the morning, Unmoored, and Warped towards the Mouth of the Harbour - Wind at North - The Resolution got under Sail, intending to Turn out - but was obliged to Anchor again - it coming on foggy, lay fast. Our people ashore in the afternoon gathering the Tops of Wild Pease, Water Cresses & Scurvy Grass. No Trees here, nor have we seen any, since

[Vol.2 - page 169]

[Chart]

Part of Nowanalscha Island -

in the Straits before Samgonuther Harbour, the
Tide from the North Slacks 3 H 19 M before
the Moon passes the Meridian -

High Water in Samgonuther 2æ H.
rise and fall very irregular - sometimes but on High
Water in 24 Hours -

[Vol.2 - page 170]

1778

July Nowanalscha Island - in Samgonuther Harbour

since leaving the Inlet the beginning of this Month.
Some pieces of drift Wood in the Harbour -

Wednesday 1st. At ½ past 6 in the Morning, Weighed, it being Calm; and began to Tow out of the Harbour - a breeze Springing up from the NNW with thick foggy Weather, at 7 Anchord again - in 20 fath's. Sand. A Rocky point on the West Side of the Harbour West ° of a mile - The outer points, N 29½ W & N 19½ E.

The People on Shore all day gathering Greens.

A Party walked over the narrow Neck of Land that makes the East Side of the Harbour, and found a small Indian Town, the only Houses we have met since leaving King Georges Sound -

They were much in the same plan with those of the Kamschadales as described by Steller- the Shape is nearly that of the Longitudinal Section of an Egg - the floor is 2 or 3 lower than the ground without, the Sides and Tops are well thatched with Straw and covered with Earth, which makes them appear as so many little hillocks or Mounts - the Entrance is at the Top, by a post with Notches in it; and the whole is supported by a few slight pillars (on the inside) within. One House generally contains 3 or 4 families or more, according to its Size - they live in the Sides, which is made a kind of broad Trench, being a foot

[Vol.2 - page 171]

1778

July Nowanalascha Island - in Samgonther Harbour

1st. lower than the rest of the floor - in the middle part are holes dug for sinks, where they empty all kinds of nastiness - this is soaked up by the Ground, and, besides occasioning an intolerable Stink, breed large Maggots, with which, together with Lice and Fleas, their Houses swarm. The largest House we saw Measured in length 56 feet, in breadth 45 - and its height in the middle 13 feet.

In the Afternoon, a Fox den was discovered, and dug out - one young one was killed and one taken alive: the rest got off. Some Grouse or Moor fowl were shot

Thursday 2d. A light breeze SSE, with fair Weather - at 6 got under Sail, and ran out of the Harbour. The Tide without being strong from the South, soon got through the Channel, on the West Side of which is the Harbour we now leave - Stood to the NNW. At 8 past 8 Saw very high Land to the NE, which we found to be a continuation, or rather, the Western Extremity of the Land we have supposed the Continent.

At Noon Lat'de. Obs'd. 54 \ddot{y} ..16' No.

Altered our Course, keeping to the NE. in the Afternoon the Weather became Hazy -

[Vol.2 - page 172]

July Coast of America - from Nowanalascha -

3rd. & 4th. running to the ENE - now and then through the Haze getting a sight of the Land to the SE of us - The 4th at Noon being little Wind, lay too, and caught Cod, having Soundings of 32 fath's. black Sand. Lat'de. Obs'd. 55 \ddot{y} ..49' No. Long'd. 197..10 Et.

Sunday 5th. at Noon were to the Eastward of the 4 Mountains seen on the 21st. of June, having run by the North Side of them within 15 Leaagues distance - the thickness of the Weather having prevented our seeing them.

Lat'de. Obs'd. 56 \ddot{y} ..29' No.

Long'de. 198..55 Et.

The Land in sight to the SE. off shore 5 Leagues - in the Night little Wind. Caught a great many Cod fish. Soundings between 35 and 40 fms black Sand.

Monday 6th. Went to 2/3ds. allowance of Beef and pork on account of the Fish lately caught.

7th and 8th. Clear Weather - running along shore to the NE - past many deep Bays: the Land making much like a Cluster of Islands. The forenoon of the 8th. Calm -

8th. Caught a great quantity of Cod and flat Fish - having bottom at 26 fathoms black Sand.

At Noon Lat'de. Obs'd. 57 \ddot{y} ..15' No. Long'de. 200 \ddot{y} ..49' Et.

The Main Land from NEbE to SSE. a low Island EæS 7 or 8 miles. Surface of the water covered with feathers.

[Vol.2 - page 173]

1778

July Coast of America - from Nowanalscha Island

Thursday 9th. This forenoon were abreast a large Sound, past which the Coast trends more Northerly Lat'de. at Noon 57 \dot{y} ..47' No.
Long'de. 201..49 Et.
Var'nt. 22 \dot{y} ..00' Et.

Our Track to the NE from Nowanalscha, makes the Land we have coasted since the middle of June, either a long narrow neck or a range of Islands.

All the Afternoon a fresh Westerly breeze with Clear Weather. Standing to the North, along a low level Coast. Soundings between 10 and 15 fathoms black Sand. At 3 Leagues distant from the Shore. At \dot{y} past 9 Saw Land all round the NE and NW Quarters of the Horizon - A point of the low Land NNE \dot{y} E 6 or 7 miles, round which was seen a continuation of the Sea, running in to the Eastward - which we imagine to be a River.

Tackd and Stood to the SW, the Wind veering round to the NW. Soundings in the Night 9 to 16 fath's. black Sand.

Friday 10th. At Day light 3 or 4 Leagues off the Shore, which here runs in a Westerly direction - a low flat Country. Steered SW till 11 in the forenoon, when we shoaled our Water from 13 fath's. to 7 fathoms and after to 4 \dot{y} fathoms - hauld our Wind to the NE and made the Signal of danger to the Resolution. At Noon Lat'de. Observed 58 \dot{y} ..15' No. Long'de. 201 \dot{y} ..10' Et.

At 1 having run 2 miles NEbE since Noon, Anchord in 13 fms. black Sand and Gravel. found a Tide setting to the SW at the rate of 2 Knots pr Hour.

Land in Sight from NWbN W^oN about 4 Leagues distant - which is the Land with distant Hummocks behind it -

2 Hills to the Eastward. East and EBS - the body of the Land to the Eastward, not in Sight.

[Vol.2 - page 174]

July Coast of America -

10th. At 3 in the Afternoon the Course of the Tide changed, running SbE. At 4 got under Sail. Many Salmon swimming near the Surface - it being thought the last Quarter of the Ebb Tide, some Water was taken up, and on trial, found lighter and fresher than Sea Water - these Circumstances with the low Land, amount nearly to a proof of our being in the Mouth of a large River.

from 4 to \dot{y} past 7, Standing mostly to the Southwards to deepen our Soundings - kept Boats ahead. Soundings irregular, from 5 to 10 fathoms, black Sand - at \dot{y} past 7, Anchord in 17 fathoms, about 7 miles South of the last Anchoring Place. A Round Hummock bearing N77 \dot{y} W. and high Land in Sight S38 \dot{y} E. Tide running to the No. and NNE.

Saturday 11th. At 1 in the morning Slack Water, having increased our depth by the Leadline 1 fathom.

At 2 got under Sail. Wind SW. Turning to the Southward - Soundings between 13 and 24 fathoms black Sand.

At \dot{y} past 8 Anchord in 24 fathoms - thick foggy Weather - No Land in Sight. Caught Fish -

A 1 in Afternoon, got under Sail - a light Southerly Wind, with hazy Weather Stood to the Westward. Soundings 22 to 25 fathoms - No Land in Sight -

Sunday 12th. Fair Weather - in the forenoon Saw the Land to the NW.

At Noon Lat'de. Obs'd. 58 \dot{y} ..11' No. Long'de. 200 \dot{y} ..21' Et.

A Round Hummock bearing NW, which we found to be one of a number of small Islands along shore. The remainder of this, and the 2 following days, had light

[Vol.2 - page 175]

1778

July Coast of America - from Nowanalscha -

light westerly winds with fair Weather - kept Turning to Windward, without losing sight of the round Hummock. Soundings between 8 and 16 fathoms - bottom fine black Sand. Cod and flat Fish in abundance -

14th. in the Afternoon, sent the small Cutter after 2 Sea Cows, but before the Boat got near enough for Harpooning, they both went down -

Wednesday 15th. At 4 in the morning being foggy, Anchored in 17 fathoms black Sand. No Land in Sight. Tide from the NE about 1 Knot. At 7 it clearing a little, got under Sail. Wind SSW. Stood to the Westward -
At Noon, just got a glimpse of the land bearing NW, and a Sight of the Sun.
Lat'de. Obs'd. 58 $\frac{1}{2}$..21' No.

A thick Fog, all the afternoon. Soundings 15 to 19 fath's. black Sand. Standing to the West and NW. - at 7 lost Sight of the Resolution - at 8 Tack'd pr Signal, and Stood to the So'ward. Wind WSW. at $\frac{1}{2}$ past 10, Saw her again, and both Ships came to an Anchor, we in 17 fathoms. Tide from the WSW 2 Knots. Sea Cows, Seals and Sea Lions about the Ship. No Fish -

Thursday 16th. between 3 and 4 in the morning, the Course of the Tide veered round, coming from the NW and after from the NE. The Fog clearing, Saw the Land from N 48 $\frac{1}{2}$ E to N 80 $\frac{1}{2}$ W. the nearest Land to us, a small Island bearing NNW $\frac{1}{2}$ W 3 or 4 miles distant.

At $\frac{1}{2}$ past 5 got under Sail, having fair Weather and a light Westerly Wind. Turning to Windward till

[Vol.2 - page 176]

Coast of America -

Noon, when we Anchored in 26 fathoms Black Sand, about 3 Leagues West from last Anchoring Birth, and 8 or 9 miles from a point of Land the Westernmost in Sight, which bore N 36 $\frac{1}{2}$ Wt.

Tide from the Westward 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ Knots
Lat'de. 58 $\frac{1}{2}$..28' No.
Long'de. 197..47 Et.
Var'tn. 21..45 Et.

Past this point the Coast turns to the Northward again and we lose the low Land - the Country being hilly and uneven - all the Land we have Coasted since leaving the Inlet, June 6th., appears quite destitute of Wood. The Resolutions Cutter on Shore all afternoon. Saw Deer and Foxes, but no Signs of people - at $\frac{1}{2}$ past 5, the tide slack'd, being low Water by the Shore - at 6 got under Sail -
At Midnight abreast the Westernmost point of Land.

Friday 17th. running to the Northward along Shore - light Variable Winds and fair Weather - Soundings between 25 and 13 fathoms black Sand.

Saturday 18th. Wind Southerly with fair Weather. At 8 in the Morning, lessened our depth to 5 fathoms, being about 3 Leagues off Shore. Brought too and got Boats out.
at $\frac{1}{2}$ past [8?] Bore away. both Ships Cutters a head Sounding - White Water towards the offing, that had much the appearance of Shoals - Stood to the NE in Shore - till Noon had Soundings from 7 to 16 fathoms black Sand.

Lat'de. Obs'd. 59 $\frac{1}{2}$..26' No. off Shore 8 or 9 miles
in the Afternoon running along Shore, Soundings from 11 to $^{\circ}$ less 5 fathoms.
at $\frac{1}{2}$ past 3 the Boats ahead made the Signal

[Vol.2 - page 177]

1778

July Coast of America - amongst Shoals -

18th. for Shoal Water - Anchord in 6 fathoms black Sand -

Lat'de. 59 $\frac{1}{2}$..37' No.
Long'de. 197..39 Et.
Var'tn. 22..30 Et.

Bearings

Extremes of High land from N 29 $\frac{1}{2}$ E to S 24 $\frac{1}{2}$ E. distance from nearest Shore, about 8 miles -

Low land in sight from Masthead NbW to N 73 $\frac{1}{2}$ Et. -

A Shoal, dry at low Water NWbW^oW 2 or 3 miles -

Appearances like Shoals to the NNE. NW and SW -
found the Tide running from the NbW 2K 2F pr hour -

The Resolution having Anchord with her Small Bower, the Cable parted and they let go another Anchor - in attempting to recover the Small Bower at Slack Water, the Buoy Rope broke. At 9 Slack Water -

Sunday 19th. At æ past 3 in the Morning, High Water.

At Sunrise, 2 Canoes came within a quarter of a Mile, and after looking some time at the Ships, paddled for the Shore again. Boats of both Ships sweeping all Day for the Resolutions Small Bower Anchor - in the Morning, saw an appearance like distant Land to the WNW.

Monday 20th. This day taken up in sweeping for the Resolution's Anchor. Our great Cutter Sounding to the Westward and SW. find a Bank with no more than 2 or 3 fathoms, running in a direction nearly South pr Compass from the Shoal, dry at low Water, to the NW of us. in the Evening hoisted the Launch in, the Resolution having recovered their Anchor-

Tuesday 21st. at 4 in the Morning, got under Sail and Stood to the Southward again for deep Water - four Boats sounding before us. At $\frac{1}{2}$ past 7, the Boats making the Signal of Danger, Anchord in 6 fathoms, 11 miles SSW of last birth.

[Vol.2 - page 178]

July Coast of America - amongst Shoals -

21st. and about 3 Leagues from the Land

A Fleet of 27 small Canoes, with only one man in each, Came off; and after much speechifying on their Side and invitation on ours, ventured alongside the Ships.

These have the dirtiest appearance of any Indians we have yet met with - in our little communication together, we found them unfair dealers - in other respects they seem to be the same kind of people as those of Sandwich Sound and the Inlet.

At $\frac{1}{2}$ past 10 got under Sail again, and Stood to the Southward till 3, when the Wind not being Strong enough to Stem the Tide of flood then running, Anchord in 7 fathoms -

the Land bearing from N 33 $\frac{1}{2}$ E to S 25 $\frac{1}{2}$ Et.

distance off Shore about 7 miles -

High Water at $\frac{1}{2}$ past 5.

At 6 Under Sail - Wind SSE. Turning to Windward with Boats ahead - Soundings between 8 and 13 faths.

(At 10 the Boats making the Signal of Shoal Water) black Sandy bottom.

at $\frac{1}{2}$ past 9, being hazy - Anchord again, being the 3d. time since getting under Sail this Morning -

Wednesday 22d. At 5 in the Morning, Weighd - and Stood to the SW with Boats ahead.

Soundings from 9 to 17 fathoms. at 10 the Boats making the Signal for Shoal Water, Tackd and Stood to the Eastward -
At Noon Anchord in 15 fathoms - 5 or 6 Leagues

[Vol.2 - page 179]

1778

July Coast of America - from the Shoals -

22d. distant from the Land, which bore from NbEæE to S 42ÿ Et. the latter being the point we Anchord near, the 16th. at Noon; and which Capt'n. Cook names Cape Newingham - its Latitude is 58ÿ..37' No. and Long'de. 197..39 Et.

At 5 in the Afternoon Weighd, Wind East. Stood to the Southward with Boats Sounding ahead. At ÿ past 9 hoisted in the Boats - continued our Course to the South all Night under an easy Sail - Depth Between 15 and 23 faths. black Sand

Thursday 23d. at Noon the Land but just in sight to the NE. depth 20 faths. all the Afternoon ran to the SW. at 6 having deepened to 26 fathoms, kept away to the Westward for a clear Sea -

Friday 24th. At Noon Lat'de. in 58ÿ ..07' No. Long'de. 194..15 Et. Depth of Water 28 fathoms black Sand - our distance from the Land 36 Leagues - Continuing our Course to the Westward. Wind at ENE -

[Vol.2 - pages 180 & 181]

[Chart 1]

from Nowanalscha to leaving Cape Newingham

[Chart 2]

Sea of Anadir

[Volume 3 - Page 182]

Journal

Of the Proceedings of his Maj'ys. Sloop, the Discovery

Chas. Clerke, Commander -

in company with the Resolution, Capt'n. James Cook -

July 25th. 1778. to Feb'ry. 14th. 1779.

Jas. Burney

[Vol.3 - page 183]

Longitude in, is reckoned from Greenwich -

[Vol.3 - page 184]

1778

July Sea of Anadir - from the American Coast -

Saturday 25th. Thick foggy Weather. Wind NE -

At Noon Lat'd. pr Acct. 58°..26' No.

Long'de. in. 192°..06' E. @ Greenwich - distance from Cape Newingham 58 Leagues.

having gradually increased our Soundings to 35 fathoms, hauled up to the NW. in the Evening it fell Calm. Anchor'd in 32 fathoms Black Sand. found a Tide or Current from the WNW - about a Knot. in the Night the Course of the Tide veered round, coming from the North, and after 2 in the morning, from the NE.

Sunday 26th. At 7 in the morning, Weigh'd and steered to the NW. Wind NE. Moderate and foggy -

Tuesday 28th. Soundings these two last Days between 26 and 31 fathoms black Sand.

depth decreasing as we hauled towards the North - The Fog clearing away had an Observation

Lat'de. at Noon 59°..54' No.

Long'de. 189°..52' Et.

Var'tn. 19° Easterly

in the Afternoon a fresh Gale from the Northward - and foggy. at Midnight deepened to 40 fathoms making good, a WBN Course -

Wednesday 29th. at ½ past 4 in the Morning, the Weather Moderate and tolerably clear, Saw land bearing WBN,

[Vol.3 - page 185]

1778

July Sea of Anadir - Islands -

29th. about 6 Leagues distant. at 11 were within a League of the Land, which has the appearance of a barren, rocky Island. Shoald our Soundings to 26 fathoms Small Stones, which is the only alteration in the bottom since we left Samgonuther Harbour, {July 2d.} having till now, constantly Sailed over a bottom of black Sand. Tack'd and Stood off.

At Noon - The East point of the Land bore N½W - 4 miles distant.

The Western part of the Land hid by a fog Bank.

Lat'de. pr. Acct. 60°..22' No.

Long'de. in. 187..30 Et. -

foggy all the Afternoon - the Land in sight at times - in the Night the Wind veered round to the NW - Steered to the NE and saw no more of the Land; increasing our depth to 38 fathoms.

Continued our Course towards the NE with Variable Winds.

August

Monday 3d. at 6 in the Afternoon, Saw Land bearing WBN distance 7 or 8 Leagues -

Our Lat'de in 62°..50' No. and Long'de. 192°..30' Et. Var'tn. 23° Et.

Since the 30th. our Soundings have gradually decreased to 15 fathoms -

At 8 last sight of the Land, having a fresh breeze from the ESE and not altering the Course.

[Vol.3 - page 186]

[Chart of Course]

[Vol.3 - page 187]

August Sea of Anandir

Our Ship has lately Sailed worse than the Resolution, which we imagine is owing to want of weight in the Bread room; having expended from thence 16000 lbs weight of Bread since leaving Cape of Good Hope; which being from the very extremity of the Ship, must have the greater effect. This cannot at present be remedied without danger of damaging the remainder of the Bread.

Tuesday 4th. Weather Hazy with rain - Wind Easterly -

At ½ past 2 in the Afternoon, Saw Land about 3 Leagues distant, extending from WNW to NE.

Lat'de. in 64°..18' No. Long'te. 194°..15' Et.

At ½ past 3, having Shoaled to 7 fathoms, Stood off Shore. It falling little Wind and coming round to the Southward, will a Swell setting towards the Shore, at 8 in the Evening Anchord, in 16 faths. Muddy bottom - The extremes of the Land, which from its extent we imagine to be part of the American Continent, bearing WNW and NEBE - and a Small Island S75W 3 or 4 Leagues distant.

found no Tide running till 2 in the Morning, when it came from the ENE at the rate of 2 Knots.

Wednesday 5th. At 9 in the forenoon Weighd, and ran between the Small Island and the Main; where at Noon, we Anchord in 7½ fathoms, muddy bottom.

The Island bearing S¼E to S30°E 2 or 3 Miles distant - and the Main Land N50W to N60E.

[Vol.3 - page 188]

1778

August Sea of Anadir -

5th. distant 6 or 7 miles. Tide setting 2 Knots to the Westward. A Number of Small Clumps on the Main Land that have a good deal the Appearance of Houses -

Received information of the death of Mr. Wm. Anderson, Surgeon of the Resolution, who departed this Life the Evening of the 3d. having some Months past been in a decline -

Mr. John Law was appointed Surgeon of the Resolution; and in his room, Mr. David Samwell, before Surgeons first Mate on board the Resolution, to be Surgeon of the Discovery.

All the Afternoon, Boats ashore on the Island to the South of us, cutting Grass and Sallad. an Indian Snow Sledge and the remains of Old deserted Houses were seen, and some Foxes.

This Island lays in 64°..27' No. Latitude, and 193°.. 38' Et. Long'de. @ Greenwich - distant from the Main Land about 3 Leagues - Variation 24° Et.

from the Time of our Anchoring to ½ past 8 at Night, the Tide or rather Current ran at the rate of 2 Knots to the West and WNW - after which it was Slack Water till near Midnight - and then the Current set again to the Westward - the Rise of fall of the Water ashore was scarcely perceptible -

[Vol.3 - page 189]

Sea of Anadir

Thursday 6th. At 3 in the morning got under Sail and Stood to the Westward. having Shoal Water were obliged to keep a good offing - Soundings all day, between 7 and 13 fathoms. black Gravel - at 8 in the Evening, Anchored in 9 fathoms, 6 or 7 miles distant from the Main Land. The Island we came from, bearing SE by E about 12 Leagues distant, and another Island WSW.

A Current setting all Night to the NNW, 1 Knot per hour

Friday 7th. Early in the morning, Boats were sent to Sound towards the NW - found Shoal Water in that direction - at ½ past 7 weighed and Stood to the Westward till Noon -

all the Afternoon, Wind Northerly with Hazy Weather - kept turning to Windward to get in with the Land. Soundings 7 to 15 fathoms -

Saturday 8th. at 3 in the morning, the Weather clearing up, found ourselves nearer the Land than was supposed. The Wind soon after dying away, at 6 Anchored in 13 fathoms about 2 miles from the Land which was in sight from N51°E to W½N. Hazy to the Eastward -

At ½ past 7 A Breeze at NE by N. got under Sail - the Haziness of the Weather, together with the Shoal Water, having prevented our making it certain (of) that this was (being) one continued Land, Stood towards the ESE on a Wind. at 10 more Land appearing in Sight to the NE

[Vol.3 - page 190]

1778

August Sea of Anadir -

8th. and the depth of Water decreasing, Tacked and Stood to the Westward.

At 9 in the Evening Anchored in 19 fathoms.

A low point of Land { the Westernmost point of the Main } bearing N9°E. 6 or 7 miles -

Lat'd. of this point 65°..43' No.

Longitude 191..35 Et. @ Greenwich

from hence the Land trends NEtherly. - found a Current setting at the rate of 3 Knots to the NNW, which continued all Night -

Sunday 9th. Wind Northerly. At ½ past 8 in the Morning, weighed the Anchor, which was done with much difficulty; a great Swell setting from the Northward, occasioned by the Wind and Current in opposition.

This forenoon, turning to Windward. at 9 the Wind freshened to a Gale, with thick hazy Weather, which hid the Land from us.

At 11 Standing to the ENE, Saw the low West point of the Main bearing SE to E, within a League of us, with Breakers laying off it - put about and Stood to the Westward -

At Noon a high Rock bore SW by S, and Land which was afterwards found to be two Islands from West to WSW. dist't. 4 Leagues. The Main Land to the Eastward hid by the Haze.

Soundings this forenoon 18 to 26 fathoms.

Lat'de. Observed 65°..46' No.

[Vol.3 - page 191]

August

Sea of Anadir -

At 4 in the Afternoon, ran by the South Side of the 2 Islands. At 7 Saw strange Land to the Westward - made the Signal to the Resolution. Stood backwards and forwards all Night; the Weather more Moderate.

Monday 10th. Stood for the Land to the Westward.

At 10 in the forenoon Anchord in 12½ fathoms Gravelly bottom, under a point of Land that bore N14Et. dist. 3 miles. An Indian Town N37W 2 or 3 miles

Lat'd. Obs'd. 65°..35' No.

Long'de. 189..12 E

Var'tn. 25..10 Et.

An Opening that has the appearance of a good Harbour - W½N -

The West Extreme of the Land in sight S32°W about 2 Leagues distant

The 2 Islands we ran by yesterday - N43Et.

No Current or Tide running -

Boats were hoisted out and Captn. Cook went on Shore to the Indian Town. Many Indians were seen running in Land over the Hills, which we supposed to be Women and Children; for as the Boats approached the Shore, the Men to the Number of about 60 Came down Armed with Pikes, Bows and Arrows.

Captn. Cook landed by himself and was met by two of them to whom he made presents, and they all soon after laid aside their Martial appearance and became sociable and friendly. A Number of Dogs were laying on the Ground that appeared just killed. Meant perhaps as a Sacrifice, on the

[Vol.3 - page 192]

1778

August

Sea of Anadir

10th. the Suposition of an Attack. Their Pikes were headed with Iron and inlaid with some Metal. They had blue Beads, and took Tobacco and Snuff in exchange for some of their Clothes, which shows they are not unacquainted with the Russians, though unwilling to acknowledge them Masters.

They sold us Salmon, of which here is plenty; a Small River running close at the back of the Town; but no consideration could prevail on them to part with any of their Arms.

They have 2 kinds of Houses; the one for Summer, the other for Winter. The former are Rib Bones of Whales, stuck in the Ground, circular at the bottom and meeting at the Top in a Peak: the Whole covered with Whale Skin. The latter are part under Ground, and on the plan of the Kamtschadale Houses. Some of them floored with Plank. In several places were Stuck up a number of the Rib Bones of Whales, ^ (making a kind of scaffolding) but for what purpose was not discovered. They have Snow Sledges and a great many Dogs.

This Land we suppose to be part of the Island Alaschka.

The Indians here, have not like those we have been lately accustomed to, holes cut in their Lips to stick Ornaments through -

At 2 the Boats returned - at 4 got under Sail. Wind So'erly.

[Vol.3 - page 193]

[Chart of Course]

[Vol.3 - page 194]

1778

August

to the Northward -

10th. with fine Weather. Stood all Night to the NE, running by the West Side of the 2 Islands. Soundings 23 to 26 fathoms.

Tuesday 11th. in the Morning kept more Easterly to get in with the American Continent.

At Noon - Lat'de. Obs'd. 66°..06' No. Soundings 29 faths.
from Noon to 5, ran 4 Leagues to the Eastward,
gradually Shoaling till we came into 7 fathoms.
The Wind dying away - Anchord. bottom fine Sand.
The 2 Islands S30° to S39°Wt. abt. 6 Leag's.
The East Main in sight from S10°E to EBN
The Eastermost point of what we suppose to be
Alaschka S62°W and Land contiguous to W½N.
No Tide or Current.

At ½ past 9 a light breeze from the North. Weighed and Stood all Night to the WNW - deepening to 29 fathoms -

[Vol.3 - page 195]

1778
August to the Northward

14th. All the Afternoon thick hazey Weather - in the Evening it blew strong at South - hauld our Wind to the Westward to keep clear of the Land, which we soon lost sight of.
This we imagine to be part of the American Continent -

Saturday 15th. At Noon having deepened to 25 fathoms, Bore away - making good nearly a North Course - keeping the same depth.

Sunday 16th. Steering towards the NE - on which Course our Soundings gradually shoaled - a soft sticky bottom, the Lead coming with difficulty out of the Ground and nothing remaining on the Arming - thick foggy Weather - the Wind veering round to the Westward.
Lat'de. at Noon. 69°..43' No. pr Account.

Monday 17th. Land Birds about the Ship all the Morning. foggy Weather. at ½ past 10 having shoaled to 11 fathoms, hauled our Wind to the NW.
At Noon Ld'de. in 70°..31' No.
Long'de. 197°..34' E
Var'tn. of the Compass 33°..00' Et.

In the Afternoon - at 2 Saw a field of Ice to the Northward. At ½ past 2 were close in with the Ice, on which were great Numbers of Sea Horses.
Soundings 21 fathoms.
Clearing up a little, Saw more Ice to the SW and Westward; kept Turning all Night, Wind Westerly with a thick fog - as we ran to the

[Vol.3 - page 196]

NW Coast of America - amongst Ice -

Southward, decreased our Soundings to less than 12 fathoms, and deepened on the Northern Tack to above 20 fms, near the Ice, which stopped our run that way - The Weather being Squally, lost Ground -

Tuesday 18th . At Noon close in with the Ice. Wind West.
Lat'de. 70°..43'; No, Long'de. 198°.. 24' Et.

In the Afternoon Standing to the Southward - at ½ past 5, the fog clearing away, Saw Land: a low point bearing SEbE 3 or 4 miles distant - at 6 lessened our depth to 6¼ fathoms. Tackd and made the Signal of

danger to the Resolution. At 7 Tackd and Stood to the SWward again - at 8 clearing up a little, got another sight of the Land bearing ESE, and Ice from NNW to NEbN, which must have drifted from the NW within this 24 hours; Our Track having crossed where the Ice now is. Kept to the SW all Night. Soundings 10 to 15 fathoms brown Sand.

Wednesday 19th. Wind still Westerly - at 8 in the Morning Tackd and ran to the Northward. At 2 in the Afternoon were near the Ice. The Weather Moderate. Hoisted out the Boats and sent them after the Sea Horse. The Resolution caught 9, we 4. The flesh very indifferent eating - fishy. The Blubber was used for making Lamp Oil.

At 8 made Sail to the Southward from the Ice -
Soundings this last 24 hours, from 14 to 17 fathoms -

[Vol.3 - page 197]

1778

August NW Coast of America -

Thursday 20th. at ½ past 2 in the Morning Saw Land to the Eastward about 5 miles distant, which was soon hid by a thick fog coming on. Kept Turning between the Land and the Ice, trying to get to Windward, but without gaining Ground, till the Afternoon, when the Wind came round to the NE and we steered to the Westward; having these last 3 days past been pent up by a Shoal Coast on one side and Ice on the other, forming a deep Gulf, which by the drifting of the Ice has been continually growing narrower, and kept us under some apprehensions of being closed in.

At 9 in the Evening heard the noise of the Sea Horses - being a thick fog, Steered to the SW to keep clear of the Ice. At ½ past 10 found ourselves close in with it - hauled on a Wind to the SE, in which direction we ran the remainder of the Night.

Friday 21st. At ½ past 10 in the forenoon, the fog cleared up. Saw land to the ESE - high and uneven.

At Noon Lat'de. Obs'd. 69°..35' No.

Long'de. in 195°..34' Et.

Var'tn. 31°½ Et.

The Land in sight from South to ENE about 5 Leagues distant.

Soundings these 2 last Days, 14 to 20 fathoms -

this we take to be part of the American Continent.

Light Variable Winds with Calms all the Afternoon -

[Vol.3 - page 198]

from America - amongst the Ice -

Saturday 22d. Foggy Weather setting in again, We left the Land and Steered to the Westward for the Coast of Asia - in this passage; which took up a Week, we kept between the 69th and 70th degree of North Latitude: Sometimes falling in with the Ice, which could not be so coasted as to tell whether it joined across, by reason of the foggy thick Weather and unsteady Winds. As we left the American Main, our Soundings gradually deepened to 29 faths. and afterwards decreased as we approached the Coast of Asia.

Friday 28th. Little Wind and close in with the Ice.

Our Boats were out the greatest part of the day after Sea Horses, of which we caught 4. Cutting the throats of these and letting them bleed immediately as they were caught, so far cured them of their rank fishy taste, that they were by many thought preferable to the Ship Salt Meat.

tried and found no Current. Soundings 25 fathoms -

At Noon. Lat'de. Obs'd. 69°..23' No. Long'de. 183° Et. -

Saturday 29th. Wind WNW. Standing to the SW.

At 9 in the forenoon Saw Land ahead, having lost Sight of the Ice 2 hours before.

At Noon. within half a League of the Land which bore from WbN to So. 61° Et. depth 10 fathoms.
Lat'de. in $68^{\circ}.45'$ No. Long'de. $181^{\circ}.24'$ Et. @ Greenwich.

[Vol.3 - page 199]

1778

August - September

Coast of Asia -

29th. The Coast low and level. Land behind Mountainous - this we find is the Continent of Asia -

till the 2d. of September running to the SE along the Coast, having Soundings constantly between 10 and 24 fathoms. The Land bends in Bays here and there, with some appearances like Openings - but on coming near the Shore, the Water is so Shoal as to (forbid) exclude any chance of a Harbour fit for Ships. Saw no Wood all along -

September

Wednesday 2d. in the Night passed by a Headland which {August 11th.} we supposed to be the Eastern point of Alaschka, but which we now find to be the East point of Asia, laid down in Behrings Chart by the name of Serze Kamen - The Land we then supposed to be the American Continent, must, according to the Chart prefixed to Steydinger's Translation of Stahlin's account of these Seas, be Alaschka.

From what we have already seen, the Chart last mentioned may be pronounced (a) very incorrect and almost unintelligible. (Chart).

From the Serze Kamen the Coast trends towards the SW -

Lat'de. of the Serze Kamen $66^{\circ}.07'$ No.

Longitude - $190^{\circ}.13'$ Et. @ Greenwich

[Vol.3 - page 200]

[Chart: Track of Course]

[Vol.3 - page 201]

1778

September Sea of Anadir - from the Coast of Asia towards Alaschka

Thursday 3d. Running alongshore to the SW. in the forenoon passed by the Indian Town near which we Anchor'd the 10th of August.

The Land to the South of this appears full of Openings but no great depth of Water -

Friday 4th. Wind Northerly and fair Weather -

in the forenoon passed another Indian Town.

Lat'de. at Noon $64^{\circ}.38'$ No. Long'de. $187^{\circ}.50'$ Et. distance off Shore 6 miles -

a point past which the Coast seems to turn more Westerly, $S20^{\circ}W$ about 4 Leags.

Variation $25^{\circ}.00'$ Et.erly

Stood towards the South all the Afternoon, without Seeing any more Land open - at 8 Hauled off to the Eastward and left the Continent of Asia, having seen no Trees all along the Coast.
Soundings in the Night 25 faths. decreasing to 20.

Saturday 5th. At 6 in the morning and again at 6 in the Evening saw distant Land to the Southward which we passed without going near; continuing our Course to the Eastward.

Sunday 6th. in the Morning saw the Coast of Alaschka to the Northward, and by the Evening were abreast the Island under which we Anchord the 5th of August at Noon; but at a great distance from the Shore. Variation 23°.52' Et.

[Vol.3 - page 202]

1778

September Coast of Alaschka -

Monday 7th. running to the Eastward along the Coast of Alaschka. a strait Shore. Soundings these 2 last days, 19 Shoaling to 10 fathoms -

in the Evening some Canoes came off towards the Ships for whom the Resolution brought too; but the Canoes paddling to the Shore again, made Sail.

A little after Midnight Anchor'd in 10 fathoms muddy bottom, about 3 Leagues from the Land, which bore from S83°W to N53°Et. -

Tide from the WSW about 1 Knot.

Tuesday 8th. At 4 in the Morning got under Sail and continued our Course to the Eastward alongshore, having fair Wind and Weather - Soundings between 7 and 12 fathoms - At 7 in the Evening were abreast the East point of a Bay, past which the Coast falls back, running in a NE direction. This point is the Southermost of Alaschka -

its Latitude 64°.21' No.

Long'de. 197°.00 Et.

Var'tn. 27°.00 Et.

At ½ past 8 growing dark, Anchord in 12 fathoms Muddy bottom, 3 or 4 miles from the Land - the South point of Alaschka bearing SW½S -

A Small Current from the SSW. scarcely 1 Knot -

[Vol.3 - page 203]

September East Side of Alaschka -

Wednesday 9th. Wind SSW - fair Weather -

At ½ past 4 in the Morning, Weighd and made Sail to the NNE pr Compass; nearly in a line with the Coast. Saw Land to the Eastward making like Islands - found the depth of Water decreasing - at 9 sent Boats to Sound ahead.

At Noon in 5 fathoms - distant from the Shore of Alaschka about 7 Miles.

Lat'de. Obs'd. 64°.36' No.

Wood in many places which is the first we have seen in growth since the beginning of June - Land like Islands in Sight to the Eastward -

At 3 in the Afternoon Shoaled to 4 fathoms - Hauled on a Wind. The Land to the Eastward which made like Islands, was seen to be one continued Body, extending North and NWward to the back of the Northermost part of Alaschka in Sight - between the two having an appearance of a Shoal Inlet or River.

Kept Turning to the Southward all Night -

Depth 4 to 6 fathoms -

Thursday 10th. The Wind came round to the North -

At 8 in the morning were within 2 miles of the West Land {Alaschka}. Sent Boats on Shore in search of Wood and Water, both which were found, but very indifferent Landing for the Surf -

[Vol.3 - page 204]

1778
September between Alaschka and America -

10th. in the Afternoon at 3 made Sail from the Alaschka Shore, Standing towards a Bay in the Eastern Land where more convenient Wooding and Watering was expected and better Shelter for the Ships. Soundings across 7 to 9 fathoms -

At ½ past 8 being dark Anchord in 9 fathoms, about 5 miles South from a Head Land that makes the West Side of the Bay to which we are bound.

Friday 11th. At daylight Weighed - all the forenoon turning into the Bay.
at Noon, Anchored in 6½ faths. mudd -

Lat'de. Obs'd. 64°..17' No.

Long'de. 198°..19 Et.

Var'n. 28°..15 Et.

Outer point of the Head Land, N63°W 5 or 6 miles

South point of Alaschka WSW -

a Small Island S45°Et. 4 or 5 Leagues

A Continuation of the Eastern Land in Sight as far as S49°Et. High and Mountainous -

This Land from its extending towards the South, we suppose to be the Continent of America; being now nearly due North of that part of the Coast where we got intangled amongst the Shoals {July 16th to 22d.}

Sent all the Boats on Shore to the West Side of the Bay. Canoes came from the Eastward who Sold us dried Fish and Berries - there seems but little different between these and the Indians we

[Vol.3 - page 205]

Sept'br. between Alaschka and America -

have before met on the Coast of America - their under Lips are Slit under each corner of the Mouth -

A Snow Sledge was seen on Shore and some of their Houses, which were built above ground of thick pieces of Timber laid close together, the interstices filled up with Moss and the whole thatched over - they are small and in different Shapes: some Square and roofed, others like the Roof only of a House, having no Walls, but the Timbers resting on the Ground and meeting in a Ridge at the Top. Some are floored with plank on the inside and a large hole dug in the Ground for Fireplace -

At 3 in the Afternoon got under Sail - Stood backwards and forwards waiting for the Boats -
at 9 they returned, the Launches laden with drift Wood, of which there is great plenty; but no good Watering Place. In Boats and made Sail to the Westward for the place we left Yesterday on the Alaschka Shore -

Saturday 12th. Anchord within 2 miles of the Alaschka Shore, abreast a Sandy Beach where was plenty of drift Wood and good landing.

So.ermost of Alaschka in sight bearing S4°W -

Lat'de. Observed 64°..31' No.

Long'de. 197°..17' Et.

Var'n. 28°..00' Et.

[Vol.3 - page 206]

1778
September between Alaschka and America -

12th. Sent our Boats for Wood and Water -
the Wood taken by us here is all drift, which being dry, was better for use than any other -
The Trees here, mostly Firs and Birch - plenty of Currants, Hurtleberries, Crow and partridge Berries and a
plant which drinks well as Tea, known in Newfoundland by the Name of Indian Tea.
Some Canoes came from the Southward with Trout and other Fish.

Monday 14th. having completed Wooding, and taken in 6 Weeks Water, at 3 in the Afternoon Weighed;
Wind NNE. Turning to Windward till 8 when we Anchord in 6½ fathoms about 2 Leagues from the Alaschka
Shore. Lieut't. King was sent with both Ships Cutters to the Northward to examine whether there was any
passage between Alaschka and the Land to the Eastward.

Tuesday 15th. At daylight got under Sail and Stood over for the Bay to the Eastward, where in the
Afternoon we Anchord in 5 fathoms Muddy bottom
Outer point of the Head land S73°Wt. distance off Shore 3 miles.
The Small Island SE¼S.
& the South point of Alaschka S62° ½W
Lat'de. Obs'd. 64°..20' No.
Long'd. 198..19 Et.

[Vol.3 - page 207]

Sept'br. Coast of America. from Norton Sound -

Wednesday 16th. The greater part of both Ships Companies ashore gathering Fruit, cutting Spruce and
Broom Stuff.

In the Afternoon Lieut't. King returned, having seen the Land of Alaschka to join with the East Main. This
Inlet Capt'n. Cook names Norton Sound.

Alaschka being part of America, makes the two Continents not 14 Leagues apart: the West point of
Alaschka, which is likewise the Westernmost of America, laying in 65°..43' No. Lat'de. and 191°..35' Et.
Long'de. and the Serze Kamen which is the Eastermost point of Asia being in 66°..07' No. and 190°..13' Et.

Thursday 17th. Got under Sail and Stood to the Southward - in the Afternoon attempted to run through
betwist the Main land and a small Island that bore SE¼S at anchor - finding the bottom too Shoal were
obliged to keep out again.
The greatest part of the Night Standing alongshore to the Southward with Soundings from 9 to 11 fathoms at
5 Leagues distance -

[Vol.3 - page 208]

1778
September Coast of America - from Norton Sound.

Friday 18th. running alongshore to the Southward
At ½ past 10 Steered for a passage between 2 low Islands that lay near the Main. Our Soundings
decreasing, the Resolution hailed us to go ahead - hoisted the Cutter out and sent her to sound before us.

At Noon Lat'de. Obs'd. 63°..35' No. Long'd. 197°..46 E.

At ½ past Noon being in 4½ fathoms and the Boats making the Signal of Shoal Water, hauled off and ran round by the West side of the outermost of the 2 Islands, having soundings from 5 to 7 faths. Continued Steering to the Southward till 8, and then brought too for the Night. Soundings in the Night from 6 to 7½ faths. Mud.

Saturday 19th. Wind ENE. At 4 in the morning Made Sail to the SW. at 5 kept to the Westward to deepen our Soundings. at 10 having run 7 Leagues, found the Water Shoaled, being in 6 fathoms at about 12 Leagues distant from the Land. The Wind freshening, hauld up the the NW. at 4 in the Afternoon, having deepened to 9 fathoms, kept away to the Westward

[Vol.3 - page 209]

[Chart: Track of Course]

[Vol.3 - page 210]

from the Coast of America -
and after to the SW, leaving the Continent of America.

in tracing the Coast from Norton Sound, the Southermost Land Seen was in 63°.00' No. high Mountainous Land extending towards the South. The farthest land seen by us to the North of Cape Newingham was nearly on the same Meridian and in 60°.00' No. Lat'de. being obliged then to leave the Coast for the same reason as now, i.e., on account of the Shoals. This makes a Gap of 60 Leagues, by much the greatest (distance) length of Coast unseen, from making the Land after leaving King George's Sound to the Northermost part seen by us. This deficiency is in a great measure made up by Soundings, got Constantly at no great depth, and always regular, except when in sight of some Island.

Ran all Night to the SW pr Compass, increasing our depth to 17 fathoms -

[Vol.3 - page 211]

1778
September Sea of Anadir. An Island

Sunday 20th. Wind Northerly. running to the SW -
in the Morning the Land of Alaschka in Sight to the Northward. At Noon Saw Land bearing SWbS 10 or 12 Leags. distant.

Lat'de. Obs'd. 63°.38' No. Long'de. 192°.40' Et. -
This is the Land we saw the Afternoon of August 3d. -

At ½ past 5 were in 4 miles of the Land, which at first made like a number of separate Islands, but now appears to be all joined by low Land, except some Rocks that lay about 5 miles South from the East End - Bushes and Scrubs in great plenty but no Trees. Ran along the East End till 8, and then Brought too with our Head to the ENE -

Monday 21st. At 5 in the Morning made Sail towards the Land. all the Forenoon, running along the SE Side. At Noon were within 2 or 3 miles of a point on which stands an Indian Town.

Soundings all the morning from 25 to 10 fathoms.
Lat'de. Obs'd. 62°.58' No. / Long'de. 190°.37' Et. / Var'tn. 23°.15' E

At 1 Bore away to the Southward and left the Land -
this Island extends in length from NE to SW 15 or 16 Leagues.

Tuesday 22d. Steering between the South and SW. Depth of Water increasing to 30 fathoms.

[Vol.3 - page 212]

Sea of Anadir. Island

Wednesday 23d. At 5 in the Morning Saw Land to the SW, which like the other Island at first makes like several separate small Islands, but on coming near proves to be so many high Clumps joined by low necks of Land, except a Rock or Small Island to the South of it. This likewise was before seen by us {July 29th.} when there were about it a prodigious number of Sea Parrots and other Sea Birds, but now scarce any - it appears ragged and barren.

At Noon Lat'de. Obs'd. 60°..22' No. Long'de. 187°..36' Et. -
The East point of the Island bearing South 2 or 3 miles distant.
Soundings this morning 24 to 30 faths.

At 1 were past the East point. Steered to the SE and left the Land, being bound towards NowanAlascha -

24th. The Wind came round to the Southward, and in the Night freshened to a Gale, which continued till the 27th. when it abated and we had Variable Winds. carried Soundings as far to the Southward as 56°..25' No. Lat'de. having then 55 fathoms, black sand. Long'de. 193°..20' Et.
After this we got no bottom till we made the

[Vol.3 - page 213]

1778

October Nowan Alascha Island -

the Land again: the Ship always Sailing too fast to get more than 50 fathoms of line up and down -

October

Friday 2d. at ½ past 5 saw the Island of NowanAlascha from NE to South - which was mistaken for an Island NE of NowanAlasch, being deceived by a low point to the Westward making like the West End of an Island we had before seen - in this error we continued till the Noon Observation set us right, by which means we got near the NW End instead of the East End of the Island.

At 1 bore away to the Eastward. at 3 hauled up for a large Bay. Canoes came off to us, knew some of the Indians for the same we had before seen in Samgnother Harbour.

Coming into the Bay had light baffling Winds. On the west Side is an Indian Town near to a low point, off which runs a ledge of Rocks: Saw Whales blowing within the Rocks. here we wanted to get but were overtaken by the

[Vol.3 - page 214]

Nowan Alascha Island - in Samgnother Harbour

October

Night. At 6 being well in the Bay, found no bottom with 40 fathoms of line. it growing dark made Sail out of the Bay again.

The outer points of this Bay bear N71°E and S71°W pr Compass of each other; distance asunder about 7 miles. at 9 lost sight of the Resolution. Stood backwards and forwards all Night. Wind Westerly.

Saturday 3d. At daylight saw the Resolution in shore of us. Made Sail and at 2 Anchored in 9½ fathoms, in Samgnother Harbour; having been kept out all the forenoon by the Tide from the SE running through the Straits between NowanAlascha and the next Island.

Moored with our Stream Anchor up the Harbour

Bearings

Outer points of the Harbour N15°W and N10°E.

distance from the East Side 3 Cables length

and from a Shoal that runs off from the West Side 1 Cables length.

Lat'd. 53°..56' N

Long'de. 193°.. 38 Et.

Var'tn. 20°..30' Et'erly.

The Astronomers Tents were erected at the Watering Place. The Resolution busied in examining and repairing her Leaks, and we in Watering.

The Indians every day brought us Fish, which with what we caught ourselves, proved more than

[Vol.3 - page 215]

1778 Nowan alascha Island -
October in Samgonuther Harbour

Sufficient to serve every body.

The Fish here are Salmon, Trout, Halibut and Rock fish. found plenty of berries and wild Herbage which served for Sallading.

Wednesday 7th. This afternoon, 2 Indians brought a Present to each of the Captains of Salmon and a Rye Loaf with Fish baked in the inside. Captain Cook imagining from this Present there were Russians on the Island, sent his Corporal of Marines back with the 2 Indians with some Rum, English Bread and a few other things

Saturday 10th. The Corporal returned and with him 3 Russians from a Factory at the bottom of the large Bay we attempted to Anchor in, the Evening of the 2d., and which is called Egookshue. This Settlement consists of 60 Russians and 20 Kamschadales. They have a Sloop here - besides this, there are other Settlements in these Seas, in which by their accounts are 400 Russians besides Kamschadales. This Island, by the Russians is called Oo-analusch -

[Vol.3 - page 216]

Nowanalsascha or Oo - analusch Island
in Samgonuther Harbour
October.

Wednesday 14th. The Chief of the Russian Factory, whose name is Erasm Gregori Sin Ismiloff, came to an Indian Town on the other side of the neck of Land that makes the East Side of this Harbour.

Next morning he came on board the Ships attended by many Indian Canoes. he received several presents from the Officers of the Resolution for which he afterwards made returns.

Many of our Gentlemen after this, Walked over to the Russian Factory 12 or 15 miles distant from us, where they met with a hospitable reception. Some of the Russians brought Boots, the Legs made of Whales Guts, and the Soles of Seahorses hide; and Bladder Jackets for Sale, the purchase being Rum, which is a very scarce Article amongst them. They drink it unmixed. The Natives will drink none.

A few days after this, Ismiloff brought a Russian Chart of these Seas, for Captain Cook to take a Copy of - This Chart extends not much more than a Degree North of Nowanalsascha. The Coast to the Eastward towards Mount Elias, is from

[Vol.3 - page 217]

1778 Nowanalsascha or Oo analusch Island -

James Burney - Journey on HMS Discovery, 10 Feb. 1776 - 24 Aug. 1779

Safe 1/64; Safe 1/79

Mitchell Library, State Library of NSW

in Samgonuther Harbour -

from Behrings Chart, so that no information was gained with respect to the American Coast -

Samgonuther Harbour is laid down 30° Et. from the Harbour of St. Peter and St. Paul. Several Islands are laid down to the WSW and within 80 Leagues of Nowanalscha, and 2 or 3 about half way to Kamtschatka. The Islands of Seduction, mentioned by Behring's Voyage, the Russians say has been searched after, but no Land found in the direction that is laid down.

Longitude of St. Peter and Paul Harbour 176°..13' Et. @ Ferro
Island of Ferro - in 17..26 W of London

Harbour of St. Peter and Paul 158..47 Et. of London
Samgonuther 30..00 Et. of St. Peter and Paul

gives Samgonuther in - 188..47 Et. of London
about 4¾ degrees West of what we find it by Lunar Observations -

Pr Maskelyne's British Mariner's Guide - Ferro lies in 17°..34' W @ Gr'ch.
gives 150..39 Et. @ Gr'ch from St. Peter and Paul
and 188..39 Et. for Samgonuther -

[Vol.3 - page 218]

1778 Nowanalscha, or Oo analusch Island -
October. in Samgonuther Harbour

The Natives of Nowanalscha are kept under great Subjection by the Russians, who have taken away all their Spears, Bows and Arrows; and left them no other Weapons but Darts for Striking Fish. Whether it is owing to their defenceless condition or their natural disposition, they are the most quiet in offensive set of Indians we have any where met with, and apparently are contented.

Their living is chiefly Fish, Sea Animals, Sea Birds, Berries and some Roots they use as Bread - the Russians themselves here, live very little better - for boiling their victuals they have large Pots, the bottom being a smooth flat Stone, and the Sides unburnt Clay. Straw serves for firing, the Island producing no Wood, and what drifts here can be but barely sufficient for the purposes of building or repairing their Houses, Canoes, Fish Gear &c.

They Strike Fire with 2 Common beach Stones rubbed over with Brimstone. like the Indians on the Continent they have their under lips slit, some in the Middle and some under each corner of the Mouth besides holes in the middle of their Noses, through which they stick ornaments; mostly pieces of Sea

[Vol.3 - page 219]

1778 Nowanalscha or Oo analusch Island
Octoberin Samgonuther Harbour

Seahorse teeth carved. The Women are tattowed on the Chin, across each Cheek, and some in the Arms. They are not niggardly of their favours nor the Men Jealous -

Words of the Nowanalscha Language -

Agadac -	the Sun	Taradac -	one
Toogedha -	the Moon	Alac -	two
Tannuc -	Land	Canoogn -	three
Ti-yer-och -	a Man	Sech'n -	four
Tootoosark -	the Ear	Chang -	five

James Burney - Journey on HMS Discovery, 10 Feb. 1776 - 24 Aug. 1779

Safe 1/64; Safe 1/79

Engelagoong -	the Hair	Atoo -	six
Kigganack -	Fire		ooloo - seven
Wask -	Smoke	kamching -	eight
Kanneck -	Snow		Seching - nine
Tang-oooh -	Water		Hasc - ten
Tang-ung -	to drink	The Continent of America - Aluksug	
Sagalic -	to Sleep		
Soonuk -	a Ship		
Keen -	What is this ?		
Ong -	Yes		
Oonigennuk -	Berries		
Marziliker -	I have no more.		

[Vol.3 - page 220]

1778

October from Samgonuther Harbour.

Thursday 22d. Wind Easterly. in the morning, Unmoored.

At ½ past 10, the Resolution got under Sail, intending to run out of the Harbour; but the Wind shifting, she got aground, and being EbE Tide, lay there till near Midnight, when she hove off without damage.

Friday 23d. Wind NW - were obliged to lay fast.

Saturday 24th. Some Russians came from an Island to the SW, called Humanak -

Monday 26th. Wind SE. At 7 in the Morning got under Sail and ran out of the Harbour. The Wind being Easterly ran to the Westward intending to go round the West Side of Nowanalscha, and from thence to the Southward for the Sandwich Islands - in the Night the Wind came to the South.

Tuesday 27th. A Strong Gale from the SW which obliged us to head the Topsails.

Thick hazey Weather, Stood backwards and forwards without seeing any thing of the Land all day.

Lat'd. at Noon 54°.21' No. pr Acct.

Long'de. made from Samgonuther 1..31 Wt.

Wednesday 28th. At 1 in the morning the Fore and Main Tacks broke in a heavy Squall of Wind, by which accident John Macintosh Seaman, was killed on the spot; the Boatswain and 2 other of the people much hurt.

in the morning Standing to the SSE to make the Land. At ½ past 7 it clearing up a little,

[Vol.3 - page 221]

1778

October Off Nowan - alascha Island

28th. Saw a point of Land bearing ENE 4 or 5 miles, and more Land extending to the South and SW'ward; but whether a continuation of Nowan alascha or part of Humanak, could not tell for the thickness of the Weather. at ½ past 9 Wore round and stood off Shore. Lat'de. at Noon 54°.01' No. - find by the Land we have lost ground since yesterday in the Evening the Wind abated and became Variable. ran to the SW all Night.

Thursday 29th. The Wind came again to the Westward and blew strong. At daylight found we were within 2 Leagues of the Shore, contrary to our expectations, as we supposed ourselves far enough to the Westward to weather the Land - there being no likelihood of the Weather moderating, at 9 bore away for the Straights of Samgonuther.

At Noon, a Rock which we had taken all the forenoon for a Sail, bore NW½W 2 miles - this Rock is about 6 Leagues distant from the nearest part of the Land. its Latitude 53°..56' No. - and Longitude (192°..11 Et - 191°..50 Et.) 192°..11' Et. -laid down too far West in the Chart.

Not being able to reach the length of Samgonuther Straights before dark, at 3 in the Afternoon, hauled on a Wind and Stood backwards and forwards till next morning.

[Vol.3 - page 222]

1778
October from Nowan alascha Island

Friday 30th. At day light Bore away - at 1 were in the Straights - ran down by the East side of Nowan alascha - in the Evening lost sight of the Land: Steering to the SSE for Sandwich Islands. Wind still Westerly.

As this may properly be called he finishing of the first Season, I have collected into one Chart all the Land seen by us from first making the Coast of America, March 7th., to our present leaving Nowan alascha - in this, no part is laid down but what we have seen ourselves: What might have been added from other Maps is left out, as another Season may perhaps afford an opportunity of filling up some of the Vacant Spaces from our own Observations -

[Vol.3 - page 223]

[Chart]

Track of Course Sailed.

[Vol.3 - page 224]

1778
November towards Sandwich Islands

Monday 2d. had a hard Gale of Wind from the Southw'd. about Sunset lost sight of the Resolution, and soon after our Foresail Split - fired Guns and burnt false fires as a Signal for the Resolution to bring too. Saw the flashes of 2 Guns in answer - Lay too all Night firing Guns and shewing false Fires, none of which were answered.

Tuesday 3d. The Wind veered round to the Westward.
At ½ past 7 Saw the Resolution bearing SBE; Set the Courses and joined her.
in the afternoon the Gale abated; Set Topsails and continued our Course to the South and SSE.
We had mostly fair Winds and no bad Weather, the rest of this Passage.

Wednesday 25th. having run as far to the South as 21°..10' No. Latitude, our Longitude in being 205°.. 52' Et of Greenwich: Steered to the Westward. Captain Cook having gone so far to the SE in hopes of falling in with some Island to Windward of those we have already seen. Ran all day keeping abreast of each other and at the distance of 7 or 8 miles asunder, that we might be less liable to pass any Land without seeing it.

At Sunset joined Company, and after Midnight Lay too.

Thursday 26th. at daylight Saw an Island to the Southward towards which we made Sail -

[Vol.3 - page 225]

1778

November Sandwich Islands - off Mow Whe

26th. At 8 were within 5 miles, when we bore away to the Westward and ran along the North Side.

Some Canoes came alongside with Fish - they knew of our having been at Atoui - a Small Iron Tool made in imitation of their own Hatchets, which they call Tae, was given to the first Indian that came on board, who held it up to shew his companions, calling out Tae no Atoui. They mentioned to us the Fray we had at Atoui, in which an Indian was killed.

The Ships going to fast for the Canoes to keep up with us, at Noon we brought too Maintopsail to the Mast, to trade for Provisions with the Natives, who brought us Hogs, Sugar Canes, Bread fruit &c. had Soundings 52 fathoms -

Lat'de. Obs'd. 20°.58' No.

Long'de. pr Acct. from last Lun'r. Obs'n. taken: 204°.09' Et.

Var'tn. 8°.40' Et'erly.

Extremes of the Island which is called Mow-whe S86Et. to N79°W. dist. from the Shore 3 miles -

The North end of another Island called Moro-tai - N64°W - had Soundings afterwards at 35 fathoms, half a League from the Shore.

The Island of Mow-whe rises by a gradual ascent from the Shore to the Mid parts, which is very high Land. from the Sea side to half way up the Mountains is laid out in Plantations -

[Vol.3 - page 226]

Nov'br. Sandwich Islands - off Mow-whe

26th. At 2 in the Afternoon made Sail and kept turning to the Eastward till next morning, gaining very little Ground.

Friday 27th. Most part of the day, laying too off the North Side of Mow-whe, trading with the Natives for Hogs and Vegetables. A Chief came on board with a present of a Hog and Red feather'd Cloak to Capt'n. Clerke. He had 2 long pieces of Iron Shaped like Skewers, well pointed, which we suppose to have been got from the Spaniards. One of the Indians held his 2 fore fingers across each other and pointed to the Land; which we construed into the Spaniards having set up a Cross on Shore. These Circumstances, however, fall far short of a Proof.

in the Evening made Sail and kept turning to Windward.

Saturday 28th. Stopped serving Ship provisions, fresh Pork and Vegetables being procured in plenty. Spirits likewise were stopped by Capt'n. Cooks order. Another Order from Capt'n Cook, was read to the Ships Company, containing Rules to be observed in our intercourse with the Natives: in which the buying Curiosities before the Ships should be properly supplied with provisions, was prohibited: and those of our People suspected of any Venereal Complaint, forbid to go on shore, or to

[Vol.3 - page 227]

1778

November Sandwich Islands. Mow-whe - Owhy-he

28th. have any connection with the Women, nevertheless, this same day, several Indians told us they were infected with the Venereal Distemper; and which on examination we found to be true. as a further confirmation, the people of a large Canoe that went on board the Resolution were searched, and not more than 3 out of 12, were without some Symptom of infection. Whether this disorder was communicated to them by us at Atou-i last Year, or that they had it before, we could not understand them, at the time, well enough to determine.

December

Tuesday 1st. having turned round the East End of Mow-whe, Saw another Island to the SE, by the Indians called Owhy he - towards which we stood, but did not get in shore till Night.

Wednesday 2d. Laying too, off the North Side of Owhy he, trading with the Natives for Provisions. Sounded and found bottom at 42 fathoms, brown Sand & Shells, distance from the Shore half a League. This was the only time we found bottom on this Side of the Island, the West Extreme in sight then bearing W¼S

All the first part of December, continued cruising off the North Side of Owhyhe; now and then, laying

[Vol.3 - page 228]

December Sandwich Islands. Off Owhyhe -

too in Shore, to trade for Provisions.

This method of recruiting from time to time, well enough answered the purpose of a present supply, except, that 2 or 3 times, unsettled Weather kept us off Shore longer than was intended, and obliged us to have recourse again to Ship provisions, till we could get near the Land.

The latter part of December was taken up in attempting to Weather the East Side of Owhyhe, which we could not effect in the course of this Month.

Owhyhe is much larger than any Island we have as yet seen between the Tropics, this Voyage - it is higher Land than Mow-whe - the Tops of the Mountains are flat and level, and covered with Snow.

Wednesday 23d. Many Canoes alongside with Provisions. An Indian swimming alongside narrowly escaped being surprized by a Shark before he was aware; but being called to and advertised of his danger, he immediately turned round and with his hand struck the Shark on the Head, which frightened him away. Other Indians continued in the Water without taking further Notice of this than now and then looking round to see if any Shark was near.

[Vol.3 - page 229]

1778

December Sandwich Islands - Off Owhy he -

23d. When the Canoes went away in the Evening, one of the Indians was left behind, who remained with us till we came in Shore again; which was almost a fortnight afterwards.

At 10 in the Night, being astern of the Resolution, the Strap of the Foretopsail Sheet Block broke, and the Main topmast Staysail Sheet, by which accidents the Resolution got out of sight before the sails could be set again. The next morning she was not to be seen - continued turning to Windward to get round the East End of Owhy he -

1779 January

Tuesday 5th. having Weathered the East part of Owhyhe, this morning bore away and ran alongshore by the South Side of the Island.

Some Canoes came alongside with Sweet Potatoes, Bread fruit, Sugar Canes &c., which we had been without these last 6 Days. The Indian who had been on board from the time of our parting with the

Resolution, went on shore. The first Week he was with us, he scarce eat anything, and was so ill that we were under great apprehension of his dying; which would have been an unlucky circumstance and created suspicions in the Natives.

At 2 in the Afternoon, seeing an Appearance like a Harbour, brought too and

[Vol.3 - page 230]

1779

January Sandwich Islands - off Owhy he -

5th. sent our Cutter to examine - at 5 She returned having found no good Anchorage, the Shore being Rocky and Steep close in. Most of the South Side of Owhyhe is covered with burnt and melted stones, as if produced by the eruption of a Volcano - though we saw nothing like Smoke rising from any part of the Mountains. This part of the Island is very thinly inhabited in comparison with the North and East Sides. in the Night, Stood off and on -

Wednesday 6th. At Daylight, bore away to the Westward. at 11 in the forenoon, were abreast a Bay which falls in just to the Westward of the Southermost point of Owhyhe, and by its appearance promises fair for good Anchorage. Stood in towards it, when soon after, we saw the Resolution to the WNW and immediately bore down. At 1 joined her again, being then off the SW part of the Island. Both Ships continued Cruizing near the SW and West Sides of Owhy he: the Natives coming off to us every day, of whom we bought besides Provisions, a good Quantity of Small Cordage, made of the Bark of the Cloth Tree; which we used for running Rigging. found a Current setting to the SE, against the Wind.

[Vol.3 - page 231]

1779

Sandwich Islands

January Karacacoo-a Bay - Owhyhe -

Saturday 16th. in the forenoon, Boats were sent from each Ship to try in Shore for Anchorage. A greater Number of Canoes about the Ships this day, than has been seen by us at one time during the Voyage. At Night the Boats returned, having found a Harbour with Water somewhat brackish but clear. turning in Shore with a light Land Breeze all Night.

Sunday 17th. At 10, a Breeze Sprung up from the Sea, and about ½ an hour before Noon, we came to an Anchor in Karacacooa Bay, {so called by the Indians} in 17 fathoms black Sand; Glad to find ourselves in a safe Harbour, after so long a Cruize in sight of Land, it being almost 8 weeks since our making Sandwich Islands.

The Ships were accompanied into the Harbour by an immense Fleet of Canoes, near 800, according to those who took the pains to count. The People on board these, were not more numerous than those who having no Canoes, swam off to us from the Shore as soon as we Anchored. The Numbers being too great to admit all Visitors none but females were at first allowed entrance, and with those the Ship soon became so thronged that many hundreds were obliged to be drove overboard, to make room for carrying on the necessary

[Vol.3 - page 232]

[Chart]

Karacacooa Bay

Latitude 19°.27' No.

Longitude 204°.02 Et.

Var'tn 8..20 et.

High Water 3¼ H. after the [moon] passes the Meridian
perpendicular rise and fall - 3 feet

All the North part of the Bay is good Anchorage
South of the dotted Line is Rocky Bottom.

[Vol.3 - page 233]

1779 Sandwich Islands
Januaryin Karacacooa Bay, Owhyhe

duty of the Ship: and it was constant employment for a fourth part of the Ships Company to keep the decks clear.

On the NW side of Karacacooa Bay, is a large Town called Kavarooa, and on the East side another that extends to the South point of the Bay, or rather a number of small Towns close together, each having different names - the Eastermost called Karacacooa and the (Western) Southermost Ka-hi.

The Space between Kavarooa and Karacacooa is filled up by a Mountain quite steep towards the Sea. The Watering place is at the Town of Karacacooa where is a pond at the back of a large Sandy Beach, with brackish Water - and a Well with better Water, just to the left hand of the Beach and close to the Sea Side - this Well is sufficient for one Ship, but not for two Ships to Water at the same time.

The Winds were generally from the Land in the Night and from Sea in the day time.
The best Anchorage is in the North part of the Bay, where we Moored with the Best Bower to the NW in 17 fathoms - the Outer points of the Harbour bearing the one South, and the other West - distance from the nearest Shore ¼ of a Mile -

Lat'de. 19°..27' No.
Long'de. 204°..02' Et.
Var'tn. 8°..20' Et.

[Vol.3 - page 234]

1779 Sandwich Islands -
Januaryin Karacacooa Bay - Owhyhe -

Our present business, besides Watering and procuring Refreshments, was to repair the Sails and Rigging, Caulk the Ship and take in Ballast. from the length of our late Cruize the Ship was in a most tattered condition and her upper Works so leaky that we had been obliged to leave off Washing Decks for the last 3 Weeks.

The Chief of Owhyhe whose Title is Aree Tabu, we learnt was named Kerri-oooboo, at this time on an Expedition against the Island of Mow-whe - the occasion as follows - the last Aree of Mow-whe, named Cumeamea, dying, left behind a Widow and Daughter. This Widow Kerri ooboo took to Wife and by her had a Son named Koorao, who when arrived at Age, was married to his half Sister, the Daughter of Mow-whe. Another Claimant was Tahitirre, a Younger Brother of Cumeamea, and who had power enough almost to drive out his Competitor - on which Account Kerri ooboo went over to support his Son's Cause.

Monday 18th. Early in the Morning, an Indian Chief, named Parrear, came on board and with a long white Stick, drove all the Indians out of the Ship. This Man, we were told, was a great Favourite of Kerri ooboo, and the principle person here at this time. He proved of great service

[Vol.3 - page 235]

1779

January in Karacacooa Bay - Owhyhe

18th. in keeping the Crowd of Indians off; for turning them away ourselves, was hardly to be effected without affronting many and beating some - besides this Service, Parrear made himself useful in recovering some things that were Stolen: the Owhyhe people being as dextrous and as little conscientious in that respect as any Islanders in the South Seas.

The Night before getting here, the Resolution lost the Lids of the Ships Coppers which were conveyed out of the Ship by some Visitors who were allowed to sleep on board. The Morning we Anchoed, almost all our Backstay Tackles were cut out of the Chains, for the Sake of the Iron Hooks and Thimbles, and carried off. Several other things which were part of the Ship's Furniture, went the same way. On occasions of this kind, some that were detected in the fact, were flogged, and some in making their escape, fired at with small Shot. Parrear was always Zealous in advising and assisting to punish the Offenders, and several instances happened of his beating those whom we excused and let go, and taking their Canoes from them - indeed, on all Occasions, Parrear was proud of displaying his authority, which he frequently did, without much feeling for his Countrymen.

Another Chief who visited both Ships and performed the same

[Vol.3 - page 236]

1779 Sandwich Islands
January in Karacacooa Bay - Owhyhe -

18th. kind of services, was named Kanine; a much more moderate Man than Parrear. -

In the Afternoon Captain Cook went on Shore for the first time, and landed at the Town of Karacacooa on the East Side of the Bay, where he was received with great ceremony by an Old Man, said to be the Chief Priest. All the People, except those of the Priesthood, laying prostrate of rather on their Hands and Knees with their Heads bowed down to the Ground. Capt'n. Cook was led to a large flat pile of Stones {like the Morai of the Society Isles} the Top making a Square Platform, which was enclosed with Wooden Rails. Within the Railing on one side was a Scaffolding with a number of Strange Carved Images in a Row before it, and several Human Skulls. He was desired to mount the Scaffolding and a piece of Red Cloth tied round him - being seated at the Top, a dead stinking Hog that had been an Offering to the Morai, some time before, was held over him, whilst a Song or Incantation was pronounced. After this, a Barbecued Pig and Sweet Potatoes were brought, with which Capt'n. Cook allowed himself to be fed, the Victuals being put into his Mouth by one of the Priests. A Cup of Yava or Kava {a Liquor used at all the Islands in the South Seas} was brought for him to drink and the Ceremony ended with his making presents to

[Vol.3 - page 237]

1779
January in Karacacooa Bay - Owhyhe -

the Chief Priest -

Tuesday 19th. This forenoon the Astonomers Observatories and Tents were erected on a piece of Ground adjoining to the Morai; and Capt'n Cook was complimented with more formalities in the same Stile, with some Variations, as those of Yesterday. Among other Strange Ceremonies, He and the Gentlemen with him were anointed with Oil expressed from chewed Cocomat Meat. A Young Pig was sacrificed before him by the Head Priest, who held it by the hinder Legs over a Fire and burnt it to death. Afterwards a drest Hog was brought, the first Mouthful was Chewed by the Priest and put into Capt'n. Cooks Mouth. Another Pig was going to be Sacrificed which Capt'n Cook declined and a Cocomat was substituted. At the conclusion Capt'n Cook of his own accord, made an offering of some Beads and Iron to an Image before which these formalities had been acted.

Restrictions and Prohibitions are laid on the Natives in the same Manner here, and by the Same Name as at the Friendly Islands: i.e. Tabu. All the Ground about the Tents for a considerable distance, was put under the Tabu; which kept them from being Crowded: None daring to come

[Vol.3 - page 238]

1779 Sandwich Islands
January in Karacacooa Bay - Owhyhe

except those of the Priesthood -

The remainder of the Week passed without any remarkable Occurrence. We continued busy in refitting the Ships, Salting Hogs for a Sea Stock and Watering. Took in near 20 Tons of Stone Ballast to keep the Ship by the Stern.

Sunday 24th. A little Accident happened this Morning that gave much Offence to our Friend Parrear. An Indian had sold a large Hog on board the Resolution and taken the price agreed on, when Parrear happening to pass by, advised the Man to part with the Hog without an advanced price; for which he was pushed away and somewhat sharply Spoke to. Soon after a Tabu was laid on the two Ships and all the Indians went on shore. Which at first was supposed to be in consequence of Parrears being Offended, till we were informed it was on account of Kerri oboo being expected, he having returned Victorious from Mow-whe

Monday 25th. Continued under the Tabu and no Kerri oboo appeared.

Tuesday 26th. About 2 in the Afternoon some Canoes ventured alongside and traded with both Ships, till a large Canoe, in which was an Elderly Chief, came off and drove them away, Chasing and running over them. A Musket was fired from the Resolution over the large

[Vol.3 - page 239]

1779
January In Karacacooa Bay - Owhyhe -

Canoe, which made them desist.

Towards Sunset, a large Sailing Canoe, in which was Kerri oboo attended by many Chiefs, came into the Bay, from the Northward, and went on board the Resolution - He was remembered to have been on board the Resolution in a large Canoe when cruizing off Mow-whe - he is tall thin Old Man, apparently more worn out with Debaucheries than with Age, his Skin being intirely covered with a kind of Scaliness, the Marks of a great Yava Drinker and his Limbs trembling under him, though in Walking he still carries himself upright and erect. The Old Chief staid on board till after dark and then went on shore, having received many presents from Captain Cook -

with respect to his success at Mow-whe, we were informed he had left that Island wholly under the Subjection of his Son Koorao, and that Tahitirre was allowed to govern in Morotai and two or three leper Islands thereabouts -

Koorao though not his only Son, is next in succession to the Government of Owhyhe, Kerrioboo's other Children being by Women of inferior condition.

Wednesday 27th. The Tabu was taken off the Ships and the Indians flocked about us again as usual. A great number of large Sailing Canoes arrived in

[Vol.3 - page 240]

1779 Sandwich Islands -
January in Karacacooa Bay, Owhyhe -

27th. in the Bay, most of them from Mow-Whe, where they had been with Kerri oboo - towards Noon, the Old Chief went with 3 large Canoes, to visit the Astronomers Tents. All the Indians in sight except those of his own Retinue, prostrated themselves, as they did likewise for Capt'n. Cook who landed soon after. Kerri oboo made Capt'n. Cook a Present that was ushered in with great ceremony and Song singing - the Present was 7 or 8 very elegant feathered Clokes and Caps, and a number of Hogs with Cocomanuts and Breadfruit. Afterwards Kerri oboo and one of his Sons { a Boy named Kaoowa} went with Capt'n. Cook on board the Resolution.

An Indian died this Morning in a House near the Tents. that it might be known how they dispose of their Dead, a Man was appointed to Visit the House every 10 Minutes, to get intelligence when they removed the Body - this kind of Look out was kept till dark and the Indians gone to Sleep. Next Morning when the lookout was directed to be renewed, it was found the Body had been carried away during the Night.

Thursday 28th. Kerri oboo visited the Discovery and brought a Present for Capt'n. Clerke of the same kind as what Capt'n. Cook had received. All the

[Vol.3 - page 241]

in Karacacooa Bay, Owhyhe -

28th. Indians in the Canoes about us, Bowed down before him, both and coming and going. in the Afternoon he came with less State in a Small Canoe that had but 3 Paddles, one of which he managed himself - the Indians omitted the ceremony of prostrating themselves, making a difference between his coming in a Public and a Private manner - however they were not negligent in their Attentions to their Chief, keeping their Canoes out of his way, helping him up the Side and shewing a readiness to assist him on every occasion -

Saturday 30th. the Wooden Rails that surrounded the Morai , Capt'n. Cook made a bargain for with the Indian Chiefs, and it was taken on board: being 2 Launch Loads of Firewood for each Ship - a Seasonable Supply, it being above 4 Months since we wooded, and none growing here within 2 Miles of the Sea Side.

Sunday 31st. This evening, William Wadman, an old Seaman belonging to the Resolution, departed this Life. He was in the Resolution the last Voyage, and left Greenwich Hospital, of which he was a Pensioner, to come this. in the Night some Houses caught Fire at the NW town {Kavarooa} and burnt down in a few Minutes.

[Vol.3 - page 242]

1779 Sandwich Islands
February in Karacacooa Bay, Owhyhe -

Monday 1st. The Body of the deceased was buried at the Morai and an Inscription on a Wooden Post fixed over him. in the Afternoon we were entertained with Boxing Matches by the Indians - the Spectators forming themselves into a large Ring - their fighting was only trials of skill, none lasting long enough to deserve the name of a Battel. If a Man was knockd down, the affair was decided. If the Match appeared unequal, a Friend of the weaker party commonly stepped between and supplied his place; by which Custom one engagement would sometimes be kept up a considerable time by a constant succession of fresh People on either side. On first entering the Ring, they approached each other with the most laughable and ridiculous gestures imaginable, clenching their Fists, distorting their Features and Straining every Sinew to make themselves look formidable - they Strike hard but never Aim their Blows, and have no other Guard or way of fending off than by holding their Arms strait out before them and retreating. On the Whole, their Method of Boxing is much inferior to the Boxing of the Friendly Islanders, nor is the same good order

[Vol.3 - page 243]

1779

Feb'ry. in Karacacooa Bay, Owhyhe

or Moderation observed -

Tuesday 2d. The Indians gave another Entertainment, which, like that of the preceeding Evening, consisted wholly of Boxing. After dark Capt'n. Cook ordered some Water Rockets and Sky Rockets to be played off, which had their usual effect -

Wednesday 3d. being ready for Sea, the Tents were Struck and taken on board - in the Evening, a House near the Morai in which our Sails had been repaired, caught fire and was soon burnt down with 2 or 3 others near it. This Accident was occasioned by their looking with Lights after a Knife one of our Sailmakers had (dropped) lost in the House, and which at leaving the Shore he told them to keep if they found it.

During our Stay here, several Expeditions or Rambles were made into the Country. All this part of the Island near the Water Side is Rocky Ground, full of large Cavities and covered with Lava or burnt Stones, in many places run like Glass. About 2 miles back is good Land, laid out in Woods and fine Plantations, which extends a considerable distance towards the Mountains. One Party was sent to see if there were any other Appearances of there having formerly been a Volcano, but after 5

[Vol.3 - page 244]

1779 Sandwich Islands
February in Karacacooa Bay - Owhyhe

5 Days Absence, they returned without having reached even half way to the Snow Mountains. No Towns were seen inland, and but few Houses, wherein those who looked after the Plantations lived.

The Provisions we got at Owhy he, were Hogs {great Numbers of which were Salted for Sea Use} Fowls, Breadfruit, Cocoanuts, Sweet Potatoes, Tarro, Sugar Cane, Bananas and Plantains, all in great abundance. Yams, which we most wanted, they had very few of, nor were they much cultivated at any of the Islands, they told us, except A tou i and Neehow.

The Ships were shorter of Bread than of any other species of Provisions, and Yams were the only proper substitute for a good Sea Stock, as no other Roots or Vegetables here are capable of being kept good any length of time.

Besides the Similarity of Language, the Natives of Owhy he have many Customs which are common with the Southern Islanders; and but few that may not be found either at the Friendly or Society Islands. The Tattow or marking of the Skin, the Tabu, the Tuggituggi, the Women not eating with the Men, their being forbid Pork or Turtle, and many other particularities, are practised in nearly the same method as to the Southward. Their Dancing, though is a ruder

[Vol.3 - page 245]

1779
February Karacacooa Bay, Owhy he -

fashion, is much like. Their Musical Instruments are Conk Shells and Drums like those of Otaheite: No Flutes. Their Common Dress is Cloth made of the bark of a Tree, which they paint in very fanciful and sometimes elegant patterns: this is just fastened round the middle; they have no covering above the Waist or below the Knees.

Their Ornaments in Dress are chiefly red and yellow feathers made up into Clokes, Caps and large Rings to wear round their Necks and Heads.

All the Women have their Hair cut quite Short behind and the fore part kept turned back- those of the better sort are commonly distinguished by wearing Ruffles made of Boars Tusks round their Wrists, and the Chief People of either Sex by carrying a Fly flap - the Houses of Owhy he are like those we before Saw at A-tou-i, dark and unpleasant.

The Natives are a Stout Active people, less cleanly in their Persons and I think more Savage in their appearance than the Natives of the Southern Islands, the Island which governs and protects the rest is honoured with the Title of Tabu - i.e. Tongitabu; and here the Chief of the largest and most powerful Island is called Aree Tabu -

The Arees here are great drinkers of Kava -

[Vol.3 - page 246]

1779 Sandwich Islands -
February in Karacacooa Bay - Owhy he -

and many of the old Chiefs from an excess of drinking, are marked all over like the Scales of a Fish, and this is reckoned an honourable distinction. These Islanders equal any people in lewdness and uncleanness; there are no kind of impurities but are allowable and in daily practice amongst them, and that without reproach or Shame.

Though there may be reason to suppose they are obliged to us for the Venereal Distemper, yet they never charged it upon us, neither did they seem to know themselves how they first caught it, nor could we learn when -

On our first Arrival, the best Articles of Trade were Beads or Buttons sewed on slips of Cloth to wear about their wrists, and Iron wrought into small Adzes in imitation of their own. latterly Iron Spikes from 18 Inches to 2½ feet long, worked in the form of their own Wooden Daggers, were given - these were called Pahooah: and few things that we set any Value upon could be procured without them.

[Vol.3 - page 247]

Sandwich Islands.
February - from Karacacooa Bay -

Thursday 4th. At Daylight, hove up our anchors, and Sailed out of Karacacooa Bay, Steering alongshore to the Northward, for Mow-whe - had light Variable Winds and fair Weather. Many Canoes followed us out of the Bay - an Indian stole one of our Tackle Hooks, but being close pursued, was obliged to abandon his own Canoe and get into another, in which he went clear off with his Prize - the Canoe we took on board - in the Afternoon, Kerri oboo's Canoe came out to us loaded with Coconuts and Hogs -

Friday 5th. the light Winds continuing, made very little progress - in the Evening were becalmed and near the Shore: hoisted our Boats out to tow off.

Saturday 6th. At 4 in the Afternoon, a fresh breeze suddenly sprung up from the NE. The Canoes all left us, making towards the Land which was about 10 miles distant - in less than an hour the Wind increased to a Gale and we lost sight of the Resolution to the Northward of us. At Midnight were within 3 Leagues of the South Side of Mow-whe. Stood backwards and forwards till Morning.

Sunday 7th. At Daylight not seeing the Resolution and the Gale continuing, Stood back to the SE to get under the Lee of Owhy he. At 1 after Noon Saw the Resolution - towards Evening the Weather Moderated. All Night Standing off and on near the NW part of Owhy-he -

Monday 8th. in the Morning, being to Windward of the

[Vol.3 - page 248]

1779 Sandwich Islands -
February off Owhy he -

8th. the Resolution, took all the Sails in and set our Rigging up afresh -
Afternoon, running to the Southward along the West Side of Owhy he - find a Current against us.
in the Night the Resolution hailed us that they had sprung their Foremast -

Tuesday 9th. The Resolutions Boat came on board and informed us that the Head of their Foremast was so badly sprung as to make it necessary to get the Mast out, and that their Old Leak had broke out afresh, on which accounts Capt'n. Cook was bound back to Karacacooa Bay again, there being no certainty of finding a Harbour at Mow-whe, and the Road at A-tou-i too exposed a place for getting a Mast out. The Indians likewise have been Sufferers from the late Gale. On the Afternoon of the 6th. when we lost sight of the Resolution, their Pinnace had been sent to Sound near the Shore - in her return to the Ship they found a Canoe upset, and the people trying to bale her out, which they were unable to do, the Sea running high - the Indians were taken into the Pinnace and carried on board of the Resolution, glad to escape with the loss of their Canoe. The next Morning they picked up another Canoe in which was 3 Men and a Child, whom they took on board and hoisted their Canoe into the Ship.
in the Night a fresh Breeze from the NE with Squally Weather -

[Vol.3 - page 249]

Feb'ry. into Karacacooa Bay Owhy he -

Wednesday 10th. At 2 in the Morning, the Resolution having made too free with the Shore, found themselves very near Breakers and made the Signal of Danger - both Ships hauled off till near Daylight and then ran along shore again. in the Forenoon being Moderate Weather and in sight of Karacacooa Bay, many Canoes came off to us with Provisions - the Indians told us that 8 Men in a double Canoe were lost in the bad Weather.

Thursday 11th. At 6 in the Morning the Resolutions Anchored in Karacacooa Bay, as did we 2 hours after, nearly in our Old Birth and Moored the Ship -
the Natives flocked about us with Hogs, Vegetables, Curiosities &c. as formerly -

Friday 12th. The Astronomers Tents were erected at the same place as before. A great many Canoes arrived in the Bay from the Northward -
Kerri oboo with his followers amongst the rest - he was very inquisitive, as were several of the Owhy he Chiefs, to know the reason for our return, and appeared much dissatisfied at it.

Saturday 13th. The Resolutions Foremast was taken out and hauled up on the Beach between the Tents and the Watering Place. All the Carpenters of both Ships were set to work to repair it.
This Morning, an Indian snatched away a pair of

[Vol.3 - page 250]

1779 Sandwich Islands
February in Karacacooa Bay, Owhy he -

13th. of Tongs from the Armourers Forge, with which he jumped overboard and put them into a Canoe. Our Boat was quick after him that he had no time to get in himself but was seized and brought on board, though the Canoe escaped - He was severely flogged and kept in Irons till the Tongs were sent from the Shore to procure his release.

Our Launch Watering on Shore this forenoon, was much disturbed by the Indians who threw Stones and played other Mischievous tricks, which made it necessary to have a Guard when she was next sent.

in the Afternoon the same unlucky Tongs were again stolen and in the same Manner by an Indian who jumped overboard and got into a Canoe with them - they were fired at with Muskets from the Ship but without execution, whilst Mr. Edgar, Our master, in the Small Cutter pursued them to the Shore near the South point of the Bay. Parrear, the Indian Chief before mentioned, was in Capt'n Clerkes Cabin when the Theft was committed, and immediately left the Ship promising to get the Tongs restored. At the same time the Resolutions Pinnace, which was at the Tent, seeing the Bustle, rowed alongshore and joined in the Chase - the Thief got first on Shore and immediately put the Tongs with

[Vol.3 - page 251]

1779
February in Karacacooa Bay - Owhy he

13th. a Chissel and the Lid of a Harness Cask, that had been Stole but not missed, into another Canoe which came out and delivered them to the Small Cutter. Mr. Edgar then thought of returning to the Ship satisfied with what he had got, but seeing the Resolutions Pinnace at hand - and Capt'n. Cook walking that way from the Tents, he thought he might safely venture to Seize the Canoe in which the Thief had landed - for this purpose he got on shore and was pushing her off, when Parrear, to whom it seems the Canoe belonged and who probably was the contriver of the Theft, laid hold to prevent him, which was resented by one of the Pinnace's Men striking Parrear with an Oar. A Crowd of Indians, who had been by the Water side {and till then all} all the time, and till then quiet, immediately began to throw Stones. There being no Arms in either Boat, the Pinnace men were so roughly handled that to avoid the Stones they all jumped into the Water and swam to some Rocks at a little distance. Mr. Edgar and one of our Midshipmen, Mr. Vancouver, who were on Shore, fared very little better, till Parrear ordered the Indians to desist, and told our people to go board with the Boats. This they would gladly have done but all the Pinnace's Oars

[Vol.3 - page 252]

1779 Sandwich Islands -
February in Karacacooa Bay, Owhy he -

13th. had been taken away. Parrear said he would fetch them, but he was no sooner out of Sight than the Mob began to throw Stones again - Mr. Edgar on this, attempted to walk towards the Tents, expecting to meet Captain Cook, but was prevented by some Indians who said they would lead him to Parrear. he followed these people and soon met Parrear and another Man with an Oar and a broken one - he was conducted back to the Boats and put off, rowing towards the Tents. In their way thither, Parrear overtook them in a Canoe and brought Mr. Vancovers Cap which had been lost in the Fray. he then asked if he might come on board the next Morning and whether we should hurt him for what had happened. being promised he should suffer no harm if he came, he went away paddling towards the Town of Kavaroora where Kerri oboo lived -

Captain Cook who at the beginning of the disturbance was at the Astronomers Tents, ran round alongshore towards the Boats with Lieut't. King, & 2 of the Marines, but was misled by some of the Indian Chiefs, and did not know any thing of the ill usage of the

[Vol.3 - page 253]

February in Karacacooa Bay - Owhy he

13th. Boats till he returned to the Tents, by which time it was dark and too late to take any Notice of it.

Sunday 14th. At Daylight, Our great Cutter which had been Moored to the Buoy of the Small Bower Anchor, was missing, and on examining, the Rope which fastened her was found to have been cut. this Theft was

the more easily committed as the Boat was left full of Water to preserve her from the Sun; which made the upper part of her Gunnel even with the Water's edge.

Capt'n. Clerke having informed Capt'n. Cook of this, Orders were given for our Launch and small Cutter to go Armed to the South point of the Bay and prevent any of the Sailing Canoes going out, but not to molest the small ones. the Resolution's great Cutter was sent in chase of a large Sailing Canoe that was making off, their small Cutter was dispatched to guard the West point; whilst Captain Cook himself prepared to go with his Pinnace and Launch to the Town of Kavarooa with the intention to bring Kerri oboo on board.

The Canoe chased by the Resolutions great Cutter was not overtaken, but her retreat cut off in such a Manner that she was forced to the nearest Shore within the South point of the Harbour, where the Indians hauled her up, the Cutter not being able

[Vol.3 - page 254]

1779 Sandwich Islands -
February in Karacacooa Bay - Owhy he

14th. to follow for the rocks. Capt'n Cook, who was then leaving the Ship, seeing the Canoe ashore, said he was sure she could not escape; and being asked how the Cutter was to get her if the Natives made resistance, he answered there could be no great difficulty, for he was very positive the Indians would not stand the Fire of a Single Musket. indeed, so many instances have occurred which have all helped to confirm this Opinion, that it is not to be wondered at, if every body thought the same.

A little before 8, Capt'n. Cook landed at the Town of Kavarooa with Lieut. Philips of the Marines, a Serjeant, Corporal and 7 privates, in all, reckoning himself, 11 - the Indians made a Lane for him to march along, having always shewed great respect to both Captains, however insolent they may have been at times to others. Capt'n. Cook had scarcely got on Shore when the Boats near the South point of the Harbour fired several Muskets at some large Canoes that were trying to get out, by which an Indian Chief named Nooe nemar was killed. the first notice we had of this was from 2 Indians that came off to the Ships in a small Canoe to complain of it, but finding they were not attended to, they enquired for Captain Cook - being told he was at the Town of Kavarooa, they went thither.

[Vol.3 - page 255]

Sandwich Islands -
Feb'ry. in Karacacooa Bay Owhy he

14th. About half an hour after this, we heard the firing of Muskets on shore which was followed by the Resolutions Pinnace and Launch firing - with Glasses we could see Capt'n. Cook receive a Blow from a Club and fall off a Rock into the Water. The Ships then fired, but at too great a distance to make certain of any particular mark. The Boats soon after came off with an account that Captain Cook and 4 of the Marines were killed and their Bodies in possession of the Indians.

The particulars of this Misfortune gathered from those who were on the Spot, are as follows -

When Captain Cook with his Party landed, the Indians made a Lane and some of them brought Hogs which they offered him - he enquired for Kerri oboo and his 2 Sons; the Indians immediately dispatched Messengers and the Boys came who conducted them to Kerri oboo's House - having waited some time without, Capt'n. Cook doubted his being there. Lieut't. Philips went in to see and found Kerri obbo just awakened. he came out to Capt'n. Cook who after some enquiries appeared perfectly satisfied Kerri oboo was innocent of the Cutter's being stolen, and desired he would go on board with him, to which Kerri oboo readily agreed, and they walked down towards the Boats. Ka oowa the youngest of Kerri obbos Sons, who was a great favorite of

[Vol.3 - page 256]

1779 Sandwich Islands
February in Karacacooa Bay Owhy he

14th. Captain Cooks, went before and got into the Pinnacle. When Kerri oboo came near the Water side, 2 Chiefs and an Old Woman who was crying, Stopped him, and made him sit down - he then seemed irresolute and frightened. At this time our people began to suspect Mischief - the Marines were stationed on a Rock close to the Water Side that they might not be surrounded by the Natives who were seen to be Arming themselves - whilst an Old Man who seemed to be one of the Priesthood was singing to Capt'n. Cook and Kerri oboo, as was thought, to prevent suspicion - Capt'n. Cook then let Kerri oboo go, and said he was not to be forced on board without killing a number of People - the Old Chief was then taken away and no more seen. Capt'n. Cook likewise was about to give Orders for embarking, when he was provoked by the insolence of a Man Armed with a thick Mat and a long Spike, at whom he fired with small Shot, which neither penetrated the Mat nor frightened the Indians as was expected. Another Man with an Iron Spike came near Mr. Philips who suspecting his intentions, drove him back with the But end of his Musket. 2 or 3 Stones were then thrown and one of the Marines knocked down. Capt'n. Cook who had a double Barrel Gun, immediately fired with Ball - the Serjeant said he had shot the

[Vol.3 - page 257]

Sandwich Islands
February in Karacacooa Bay. Owhy he

14th. the wrong Man, on which he told the Serjeant to Shoot the right. The Indians gave a general Volley of Stones and began to close on our people; Capt'n. Cook therefore gave Orders for the Marines to fire, which they did amongst the Crowd and were seconded by the Boats. The Indians at first gave back, but directly after, before the Marines had time to load again, advanced. Capt'n Cook called out to take to the Boats - the Pinnacle was near the Shore, but distant from the Rock where the Marines Stood 10 or 12 Yards and this Short Space was uneven Slippery Rocks, so that being pressed upon, in their retreat, they were obliged to take to the Water. Capt'n. Cook in coming down, was Struck by an Indian behind him with a Staff, on which he turned and beat the Man back with his Musket. he was again followed and received at the same instant, a Blow in the Head and a Stab with a Spike, in the Neck, with tumbled him into the Water. being no swimmer and stunned with the Blow, he turned towards the Shore again, and a Number of Indians surrounded and dragged him on the Rocks, where they Beat and stabbed him in several places, snatching Daggars from each other out of eagerness to have their Share in killing him.

[Vol.3 - page 258]

1779 Sandwich Islands
February `in Karacacooa Bay. Owhy he

14th. four of the Marines were killed, one of them on Shore {Thos. Fatchet} whom nobody knew what became of: the other three in the Water, viz., James Thomas, Corporal; John Allen and Theophilus Hinks, private.

The Corporal had loaded again, and received a Stab in the Belly when up to the middle in the Water. he fired at the Indian who gave it and directly after fell dead. they were all dragged on Shore.

of those that escaped, the Lieut't. of Marines was wounded in the Shoulder by a Spike, the Serjeant received a Slight Wound, and one of the Marines, Jackson was struck in the Face with a Stone, by which he is in danger of losing an Eye; being unable to swim he would probably have drowned or fell into the hands of the Indians, had not Lieut't. Philips jumped overboard out of the Pinnacle and assisted him. The People in the Boats, at first had so little apprehension of any Danger from the Indians, that when the firing began on Shore, the Pinnacle put close into the Rocks to let Ka oowa Land, as he was much frightened and asked to go.

The whole of the Affair, from Capt'n. Cooks leaving the Resolution to the return of the Boats, happened in the Short space of one Hour. 9 Stand of

[Vol.3 - page 259]

Sandwich Islands
in Karacacooa Bay - Owhy he

14th. Arms with Iron Ramrods, besides Capt'n Cooks double Barrel Gun and Hanger, fell into the hands of the Indians -

On Notice of our defeat, the Boats Stationed near the Points of the Harbour were recalled and a strong reinforcement sent to Lieut't. King at the Tents and soon after Orders to Strike them and get the Resolutions Foremast off. Many Indians being seen assembling to the right of the Tents, kept firing with our great Guns to disperse them; and a large Party of our People were posted on the Morai, which overlooked that part of the Beach where the Mast lay, to protect those who were busied in launching it.

About 1 every thing came off from the Shore without any other Molestation from the Indians than a few Stones, in return for which, some of them were Shot who ventured nearer than otherwise they would have done, from an Idea that their Armour {thick Mats soaked in Water} were Musket proof. Notwithstanding this, an Indian of the Priesthood named Kerri kaer, well known amongst our People, remained with them till the Tents were struck and supplied them with drest Hogs, Cocoanuts and Water.

The Indians were observed to be very carefull of conveying away their Dead. Proofs of great Courage were Shewn by 2 Men in

[Vol.3 - page 260]

1779 Sandwich Islands -
Febraury in Karacacooa Bay - Owhy he -

14th. carrying off a dead Body from within reach of our Fire.

At 4 in the Afternoon the Boats were ^sent to the Town of Kavarooa to demand the dead Bodies - on approaching the Shore, Stones were thrown which fell short. Lieut't. King went in with our small Cutter waving a White Flag, [illegible] whilst the other Boats lay on their Oars. The Indians left off throwing and waved a white Flag in return. They had already made a number of little Stone Breast works to screen them from our Fire Arms, and during this conference they several times counted our Numbers - in Answer to the Demand, some Chiefs said that to Morrow the Bodies should be brought, of which, word was sent to Capt'n. Clerke -

An Old man, named Koo-aha, whom we have all along taken to be the Chief Priest, had the confidence to swim off and get into the Boat, where her remained some time. he had an Iron Dagger in his Hand. This is the same Man

[Vol.3 - page 261]

Feb'ry. in Karacacooa Bay - Owhy he -

14th. who performed the Stange Ceremonies when Capt'n. Cook landed at our first coming here -

The reason given why the Bodies were not delivered to Night, was that they were carried some distance up into the Country.

At another part of the Town, however, the Indians made Motions which we thought Signified they were cut to pieces - and one fellow came to the Water Side flourishing Capt'n. Cook's Hanger with many tokens of exultation and Defiance. Orders soon after came for the Boats to return.

After Dark, a guard Boat was stationed to row round the Ship, lest any of the Indians should swim off and attempt to cut the Cables - They were very busy on shore all Night, making much Noise, running about with Lights, and Howling, as we suposed over their Dead.

SAFE 1/79
MMS CY 218

Journal of the proceedings of His Majesty's Sloop, the Discovery
Charles Clerks, Commander, in Company with the Resolution, Captain James Cook

Volume 4: 15th February 1779 to 24th August 1779

Part 2nd of death of Captain Cook

by Admiral James Burney

[Vol.4 - page 1]

1779
At the Sandwich Islands -
in Karacacooa Bay, Owhyhe -

1779 February -
Monday 15th. in the Morning, Kooaha the Chief Priest came in a Small Canoe alongside the Resolution and desired that Capt'n Clerke or Mr. King would go on Shore for the dead bodies. he was answered we expected they would bring them. he came off 3 or 4 times in the course of the day and always with the Same Message.

it being suspected the Indians were collecting a number of Canoes behind the NW point of the Harbour, the Resolutions pinnace was sent to look but found none. the Indians threw Stones at the Boat as she went alongshore -
in the Afternoon Lieut't. John Gore was appointed to command the Discovery, Captain Clerke having taken command of the Resolution. likewise Mr. William Harvey was appointed 3d. Lieutenant of the Resolution.

At 8 in the Evening, 2 Men came off in a Canoe, one of them Kerrikaer who was with our people on the Morai when the Mast was getting off. he brought with him a Small bundle in which was the flesh of one of the thighs of our late Commander. he said the body had been burnt and the limbs distributed amongst the Arees or Chiefs as trophies; that what he now brought was secretly and without their knowledge. he advised Capt'n. Clerke to give no credit to Kooaha the Chief priest, none of the Indians being inclined to peace except those living in the Towns round the Bay, who were not likely to be the Sufferers. the account he gave of the loss sustained by the Indians was 20 killed and Kavarooa and 6 from the Morai at Karacacooa, besides many wounded.

Amongst the dead were 6 Chiefs, 2 of whom were Kanine and his brother. the former of greater consequence than any of the rest. he had been a constant visitor to the two Ships, in particular the

[Vol.4 - page 2]

1779 The Sandwich Islands
February in Karacacooa Bay - Owhyhe -

15th. Resolution, where he exercised his authority in keeping his countrymen orderly the as Parrear had formerly done on board our Ship -
at 10 Kerrikaer was conducted past our Ship by the Resolutions boat, lest we should fire at him on his way to the Shore.

Tuesday 16th. About 2 in the Afternoon, a Small Canoe came from the town of Kavarooa and Stopped near the Resolution. after looking at her some minutes, an Indian in the middle of the Canoe stood up and put

Captain Cooks hat on, making many flourishes and antick gestures expressive of defiance and derision. he was fired at and a boat manned to chase him, on which he made towards the Shore where he was received with great Shoutings by a crowd of Indians. 3 Great Guns were fired which dispersed them.

Notwithstanding this, the Old Chief Priest came from the town of Kavarooa almost directly after and paddled several times about the Ships asking for somebody to go on Shore. two boys likewise swam off from the Town of Karacacooa each of them holding a Spear and singing or rather repeating a set prayer. being permitted to come on board, they delivered their Spears and asked to stay with us. not understanding the meaning of their errand, they were sent on shore again -

Wednesday 17th. in the morning, Carried out Small Anchors and warped the Ship nearer to the town of Karacacooa so as to command the Watering place. At 9 the Launches of both Ships were sent with the Resolutions Casks, and with them the other boats armed.

At their landing and during the whole time of watering, they were pelted by the natives from their houses and from behind Stone walls with which many of the houses are surrounded; although a constant fire of Musketry was kept up at every man that was seen and several Great Guns fired from the Ship.

All this did not prevent Kooaha from coming off to the Ships with the same pretext as before. from the Ships he went to the beach near our Waterers to whom he offered a Pig. being turned away, he landed at the houses beyond the Morai and was afterwards seen

[Vol.4 - page 3]

1779

February in Karacacooa Bay, Owhyhe.

17th. seen amongst the Stone throwers.

At noon the boats returned with 2 launch loads of Water -

Our Stock of fresh pork and vegetables being out, served Salt provisions and biscuits again - during dinner time, our Small Cutter was stationed near the Well to keep off the Indians lest they should play tricks with the water -

in the Afternoon, Lieut't. Rickman was sent again for Water, with orders in case of Molestation to set fire to the Town.

The Indians beginning with their Slings, the boats were directed to keep out of the way of the Great Guns, and a constant firing was kept up from the Ship for about 15 minutes, after which Our people landed and set fire to the houses between the Watering place and Morai {about 60} . 7 or 8 Indians were killed and one taken prisoner, who was sent on board the Resolution and afterwards released.

The Well where we watered being at the foot of a Steep Hill, a Crowd of Indians got on that part right over the Waterers and rolled large Stones down, some of which came very near and made our people run to get out of the way, which always produced a loud Shout.

Among these people we saw Parrear and none appeared more busy. A wall piece was fired from the Ship but would not carry the distance. except this, the Waterers met with very little disturbance the rest of the day, scarce an Indian appearing within reach of a Musket. The Inhabitants of the Town beyond the Morai were seen carrying their things away inland.

At 5 in the Afternoon, the Indians on the hill having been for some time quiet, about 12 of them walked down to the Waterers each holding a White flag and a Sugar Cane - at the head of these people was Kerrikaer with a very small pig - he said he was sent by Kerri oboo to desire peace - one of our boats took him off to the Ships.

At Sunset, the Waterers came on board and soon after Kerrikaer was landed again. We learnt from him our great Cutter had been

[Vol.4 - page 4]

1779

February The Sandwich Islands.
in Karacacooa Bay, Owhyhe.

Stole by Parrears people - and that She was broke to pieces the day after Captain Cook was killed.
In the Night, Canoes came off to the Ships with Bread fruit, Sweet potatoes, &c.

Thursday 18th. At Daylight the Indians stuck white flags in different places round the Bay and on the Hill. At 7 the boats were sent for Water. All quiet, the Indians keeping at a distance. Whilst the Casks were filling, Karrikaer came and asked leave to make an offering of a roast pig to one of the images on the Morai; which was granted.

in the forenoon, Kooaha, the old priest, came alongside in a small Canoe with a Hog and some plantains - he was turned away from both Ships, after which he went on Shore among the houses to the Southward and came near the Morai on which a small party of our Men were stationed, at whom he threw Stones. 2 Muskets were fired which missed him. After he was gone, A Number of Indians came one at a time with Sugar Canes and breadfruit which they laid on the beach and went away - these were sent off to the Ships.

in the Afternoon an Indian Chief named Eapoo, came down the hill to the Waterers and asked to go off to Captain Clerke, being sent, he said, from Kerri oboo. he was carried on board the Resolution where he remained about an hour and was landed again. At Sunset the Waterers came on board in the Night some small Canoes came, and several Indians swam off to the Ships with breadfruit to sell.

Friday 19th. Employed Watering. Eapoo made another visit and brought some hogs, plantains &c. as a present from Kerri oboo.

Saturday 20th. Employed Watering. this forenoon the Resolution Stepped her foremast and began to rig it.

At noon, a great many Indians with white flags, sugar Canes, hogs &c., marched in procession down the hill to the watering beach, beating drums and uttering loud yells. At the head of these people

[Vol.4 - page 5]

1779

February From Karacacooa Bay, Owhyhe -

20th. was Eapoo, who came off with Captain Clerke in the Resolution's Pinnace, bringing a parcel wrapped up in Indian Cloth, which contained part of the bones of Captain Cook -

Some time after, a boat was sent on shore to fetch off a present of Provisions.

Sunday 21st. At 10 this forenoon, Eapoo came down the hill in the same kind of order as yesterday, and bringing the remainder of the bones of Capt'n. Cook, and his double barrel Gun. With Eapoo came on board Kaoowa, the youngest of Kerriobbo's Sons.

In the Afternoon, Canoes came off to the Ships with provisions to sell. At Sunset the Resolution fired 10 Minute Guns with the Colours half Staff up, when the remains of our late Commander were committed to the deep.

Monday 22d. At Noon, a present of provisions came on board from Kerriobbo. in the Afternoon, our Water being complete and the Resolution ready for Sea, Unmoored. Received a four oar'd Cutter from the Resolution to supply the place of our large Cutter. At 8 Weighed and sailed out of Karacacooa Bay, with a light land Wind.

Tuesday 23d. Standing to the Northward along the West Side of Owhyhe. Some Canoes came off to us with provisions to traffic.

Wednesday 24th. Wind Easterly - a Moderate breeze all the Morning. Ran by the West side of an Island called Karhowra owe, which is about 8 Leagues in Circuit. This Island looks ragged and bare of trees, making such an appearance as Neehow.

At Noon, were Standing to the Northward between Mowwhe and another Island called Oranni - the South Sides of each being in direct Opposition bore N79°Wt. and S79°Et.

Lat'de. Obs'd. 20°..44' No.

Long'de. 203°..12' Et.

Var'tn. 8°..30' Et.

Most part of the afternoon, light Winds and Calms. Canoes alongside with vegetables.

After Dark, the Wind coming from the South, hauled to the Westward to pass by the South Side of Oranni.

[Vol.4 - page 6]

1779 The Sandwich Islands
February to Wouahow, and thence to Atoui -

Thursday 25th. At Noon, were becalmed about 4 miles distant from the South End of Oranni, which bore from N30°Wt. to N41°Et.

Lat'd. Obs'd. 20°..42' No.

Long'de. in 203..00 Et.

towards Evening had a light breeze Easterly. Steered to the NW for the West part of Morotai.

Oranni is 5 Leagues in length from NW to SE. it appears ragged and without trees. the Indians say it abounds in roots.

Friday 26th. Ran by the west Side of Morotai - had Soundings at 2 miles distance from the SW end, 19 fathoms corral bottom - this part of Morotai appears naked. on the East Side {which we have seen} are Trees. in the Night Stood backwards and forwards between Morotai and Wouahow. Wind Easterly -

Saturday 27th. At daylight bore away for Wouahow.

At Noon, the North end, which is a low Sandy point, bore S18 Wt.

3 miles distant. our Lat'de Obs'd. 21°..46' No.

from this point for near 4 Leagues to the SW is a sandy beach, along which we ran at about a mile from Shore, having Soundings between 20 and 13 fathoms. At ½ past 2 Anchord in a Bay on the NW side of Wouahow, in 13 fathoms fine sand, 1 mile off Shore - the outer points bearing N27° Et and S58° Wt. a River S75° Et.

Lat'de. in 21°..35' No

Long'de. in 201..44 Et.

Var'tn. 8°..30' Et.

All this part of Wouahow appears very pleasant and fruitfull -

Boats were sent to look for a Watering place, but returned at Sunset without finding any, the River being brackish for more than half a mile up and too Shole for a Boat to get so far.

We saw very few people here. Some Canoes came off with provisions to traffic: they brought great quantities of a large sweet root which they call Tee. The Chief of Wouahow we were told was gone to Morotai, with which Island he was at War.

Some Women that came in the Ship from Owhyhe, were sent on Shore, that the news of our late misfortune might not go to Atoui with us. At ½ past 7 got under Sail and left Wouahow.

Sunday 28th. At Noon, Saw Atoui. At Sunset were within 4 miles of the SEt. End. Stood off and on all Night.

March. Monday 1st. At daylight bore away. At ½ past 8 Anchord near the Island of Atoui in the same road where we lay last year. and Moored.

Extremes of Atoui N69° ½ Wt. and S67° Et. distance off Shore 2 miles -

The River at which we watered N.NE½E.

The Island of Neehow in sight to the Westward.

Lat'd. in 21°..56' No. Long'd. in 200..20 Et. Var'tn. 8..46 Et.

[Vol.4 - page 7]

1779 Sandwich Islands -
March at Atoui -

1st. Canoes came alongside with Hogs, Yams and Sweet potatoes. in the Afternoon the Resolution's Boats on Shore Watering, were insulted and robbed of several things by the Natives - as they put off from the Shore, the Indians threw Stones: in return a Musket was fired which killed one Man. We find they are not ignorant of what has happened at Owhyhe, which I believe they consider as a reproach to themselves for being frightened into submission by us last Year.

Tuesday 2d. At daylight, the boats of both Ships were sent to get Water and a Guard of about 50 Men landed to keep the beach clear - the Indians remained quiet and at a distance. At 4 in the Afternoon the boats and the Guard came off. Many Canoes alongside all day, trading with Salt and provisions.

Wednesday 3d. Boats watering with the same Guard as Yesterday - Completed the Resolutions Water.

Thursday 4th. Some of the Atoui Chiefs came on board the Ships, who promised that the Natives would be more friendly and peaceable ashore than the first day, attributing their riotous behaviour to quarrels amongst the Chiefs which occasioned a general want of Order. The Sovereignty of Atoui is at present disputed for between Taume hanno the Chief who governed when we were here before, and a boy named Ka-avie. They are both Grandsons to the Chief of Wou a hou - among those who visited us to day was an Old Lady, the mother of Ka-avie.

The Goats left by us at Neehow have suffered from their unsettled State, having been a bone of contention and occasioned bloodshed amongst the Indians as well as their own destruction.

Friday 5th. Completed the Discovery's Water.

Sunday 7th. This forenoon were visited by Taume hanno. The Mother of Ka-avie being then on board, he could not be prevailed on to go into the great Cabin whilst she was there. Ka-avie's party, we are told, is likely to prove too hard for him. in the Afternoon, Ka-avie himself made a visit to the Ships - he is a very handsome boy, but appears to be of a sickly constitution.

[Vol.4 - page 8]

1779 The Sandwich Islands -
March from Atoui - at Neehow -

All this time continued trading for provisions, Salting pork &c. - Considering the shortness of our Stay at Atoui, the Ships were supplied with a greater number of Hogs than at any Island in the South Seas: and to judge by the great concourse of people that constantly flocked round us at the Watering place, I believe no Island we know of is more populous in proportion to its size. Whilst we lay here, none of us ventured to walk about or Straggle on Shore amongst the Indians as formerly -

Monday 8th. This Morning Weighd our Anchors and sailed out of Atoui Road. in the Afternoon Anchord near the SW part of Neehow in 24 fathoms fine white Sand, and Moored with the Small Bower to the Westward.

Lat'd. in 21°..48' No.

Long'de. in 199..46 Et.

Var'tn. 8..50 Et.

Extremes of Neehow N 4^oW and E ¾S. distance from Shore half a League -

A small Island {Outoura} S52 Wt. 5 or 6 Leag's.
Sounded and found good bottom about the Ship.

9th. and 10th. The Launches on shore trading for Yams, and Canoes alongside with provisions and Salt.

Thursday 11th. The launches were sent in the Morning as usual to trade for yams, but found a Tabu {prohibition} had been laid on them. this was done by some Chiefs just arrived from Atoui in consequence of a present which they said was coming for the Ships.
The people of Neehow hesitated whether or no they should submit to this order and appeared disposed to be refractory. Our making a small present to the Atoui Chiefs got the Tabu taken off and trade went on again as before.

There are at Neehow many Priests and, what we have not seen at any other of these Islands, Priestesses, who all act as if they were inspired by some supernatural power, performing numberless Mad and strange pranks.

Saturday 13th. The Resolutions Boats were sent to examine the West side of Neehow.
in the Evening they returned having found Anchorage in a Sandy bay, and Water $\frac{1}{4}$ of a mile from the Sea side, in small Wells. This Bay is open to the North winds.

Sunday 14th. This forenoon, one launch was sent to a Small Cove on the West side of the Southermost point of the Island to look for Water, the

[Vol.4 - page 9]

1779

March from the Sandwich Islands - towards Kamtschatka -

14th. The Resolution having got some there last year - found none now. Parties on shore all day trading for Yams and Cutting broom Stuff.

Monday 15th. At 7 in the Morning, Weighed and Sailed from Neehow -
Steered to the Westward in search of a low flat Island which the Indians told us lay to the West of the little Island Outoura - they call it Tomogoo papappa - it is uninhabited and abounds in Turtle.
Outoura is in Lat'de. 21..41' No.
and Long'de. 199..25 Et.
uninhabited likewise.

One Canoe belonging to some Atoui Chief staid with us till Sunset, and then went towards the Island Outoura which was 4 miles distant to the SE. their business, they told us, was to catch red birds, and that next day they intended going to Tomogoo papappa for Turtle.

At $\frac{1}{2}$ past 8 hauld on a Wind to the Northward. At Midnight Tackd. Under Topsails all Night.

Tuesday 16th. Wind ENE. At daylight found we had fell greatly to leeward, the Island of Outoura being above 6 Leagues to the Windward of us. Bore away. At 7 the Resolution made our Signal to keep 6 miles distant from her and on her Starboard Beam. At 8 the Island Outoura {which was the last we saw of the Sandwich Islands} bore ENE, distant 8 or 9 Leagues - imagine we drifted past Tomogoo papappa in the Night.

Steered a little to the Southward of West, to keep the trade wind, which was but light and variable from NE to ESE. Every day for the first week saw numbers of Tropic birds, Boobies, and Men of War birds.

Friday 26th, in the forenoon the Resolution made the Signal for seeing land, which however, proved to be only a haze bank.

Saturday 27th. at Noon, Lat'de. in 19°..49' No.
Long'de. in 182..40 Et.
Var'tn. 12°..15' Et.
from this day Noon Steered to the Northward of West.

Sunday 28th. Lat'de. at Noon 20°..04' No. Long'd. 181..52 Et.
This Afternoon, Saw a Turtle.

Monday 29th. in the forenoon Saw a great many Sea birds.
Lat'de. at Noon 20°..10' No. Long'd. in 181°..01' Et.

[Vol.4 - page 10]

1779
March towards Kamtschatka -

Tuesday 30th.
At Noon Lat'de. 20°..20' No.
Long'de. 180..15 Et.
Var'tn. 12°..30' Et.
The Trade Wind being light and unsteady, Shaped our Course more towards the North.

April

Tuesday 6th. This last week have steered nearly on one Course - {between NW and NWbN}. the Winds continuing Easterly till this forenoon.
Lat'd. at Noon 30°..06 No.
Long'de. in 170..21 Et.
Var'tn. 10°..45' Et.
Wind Northerly - Steering to the Westward.

Thursday 8th. Variable Winds and Squally Weather with much rain.
Lat'd. at Noon 30°..41' No.
Long'de. in 167..32 Et.
Var'tn. 10°..30' Et.
Course to the NNW.

Monday 12th. both the Ships Companies were put to a whole allowance of Spirits.
Many Sea birds about us. passed a Log of Wood -
Lat'd. at Noon 37°..10' No.
Long'de. in 164..36 Et.

from the 12th. to the 17th. Saw many Sea birds and passed a good deal of drift wood.
17th. at Noon Lat'de. in 43°..19' No.
Long'de. in 160..16 Et.
Var'tn. 7° Et.

21st. and 22d. Saw Geese, Ducks and other birds -

Friday 23d. Wind NE. a fresh breeze with Snow and Sleet.
At 6 in the Morning Saw the Coast of Kamtschatka bearing from NbE to WBS.
Made the Signal. At ½ past 6 had Soundings at 70 fathoms, Sand, 3 or 4 Leagues from the Shore.
Our Lat'de. then 52°..18' No. amd Long'de. 158°..54' Et. Var'tn, 6°..15' Et.
The Land broken, mountainous and covered with Snow.

From this to the 28th. trying to get to the Northward towards the Bay of Awatscha.
A fresh Gale from the NE with constant Snow, Sleet and foggy Weather.

[Vol.4 - page 10 continued]

23d. and 24th. frequently lost sight of the Resolution, but were lucky enough to join her again.

Sunday 25th. in the Afternoon, again lost sight of the Resolution. Our ship has some time past, gone considerably worse than the Resolution. Shortening Sail for us these 3 last days has considerably detained her. As we did not see or hear any thing of her in the night or next day, we continued turning Northward for the Bay of Awatscha.

[Vol.4 - page 11]

1779

April Kamtschatka - into Awatscha Bay -

Wednesday 28th. The Wind became moderate. At Noon Saw the Awachinsky Mountain bearing N15° Wt. Lat'd. in 52°..22' No.
At Night, Calm.

Thursday 29th. light Winds and fair. At Noon Saw the Entrance of the Bay of Awatascha N30° Wt. Our Lat'd. Obs'd. 52°..39' No.

At 6 in the Evening were within 4 miles of the Eastern point of the Entrance into the Bay, on which is a look out house. Saw the Entrance blocked up with Ice. Night coming on and the Wind right in, hauld off till next morning. fired guns in the Night as a Signal to the Resolution in case she should be within hearing -

Friday 30th. At daylight were 4 Leagues South of the look out house point - light No'erly winds till 9, when it came round to the Southward - Stood towards the Bay again.

At 10 Saw the Ice drifting out in large broken fields. At Noon the look out house N13° Et. 5 or 6 miles. Lat'd. Obs'd. 52°..46' No.

A great deal of loose Ice about us. All the bays alongshore full of low Ice.

Served Biscuit again, the Yams being expended.

Afternoon - At ½ past 1 it fell calm - the tide setting on shore, came to an Anchor in 20 fathoms at a mile distance, and about 5 miles from the look out house point which bore N20° Et. Caught plenty of Cod.

At 3 a breeze from the Southward. Weighd and Stood towards the Bay, the entrance appearing quite clear of Ice. At 5 the Resolution's Cutter came out to us, the Resolution having Anchord in Awatscha Bay 2 days before. At 6 were in the entrance of the bay. At ½ past 10 Anchord in 7 fathoms about 4 miles distant from the Town of St.Peter and Paul, the Entrance of the Bay bearing S23° Et. to S37° Et.

May

Saturday 1st. in the Morning got under Sail and ran further in, where we Anchord and Moored near the Resolution and about half a League from the Ostrog of St.Peter and Paul, not being able to get nearer for the Ice. The harbour of St.Peter and Paul is froze up - no part of the Shore is yet clear of Ice, nor the land clear of Snow. The Country all round the Bay, woody.

The Resolution Anchord in the Bay of Awarscha April 28th. in the Afternoon - the next Morning an Officer was sent to the Ostrog of St.Peter

[Vol.4 - page 12]

1779

May Kamtschatka - in Awatscha Bay.

and Paul with 2 Letters which Ismiloff the Chief of the Russian factory at Oonalaska had given to Captain Cook: one directed to Major Behm, Governor of Kamtschatka, and the other to the Commanding Officer [?] at this place - the Russians were Much alarmed at the first appearance of Strangers; however they sent Sledges drawn by Dogs to the edge of the Ice for our people, boats not being able to get within a mile of the Ostrog. The Commanding Officer here who is only a Serjeant, immediately sent an express to Bolcheretzkoï with the letter for Major Behm.

The Inhabitants of St. Peter and Paul are about 40 Soldiers, some of whom have families, and scarcely so many Kamtschadales - these with the Men belonging to a Sloop in the Harbour {50} were all the people we found here. The evening after the Resolution arrived, we were within 4 miles of the look out house - the Bay then appeared to be full of Ice; occasioned by part fast to the Shores within the Bay breaking off, which in drifting out had choaked up the entrance: Night coming on, prevented our examining closer. This last Winter, the Russians tell us, has been the severest felt at Kamtschatka for many years past.

The Carpenters of both Ships were employed in caulking the Resolutions sides and under her bends. All the latter part of our passage to Kamtschatka, She had been very leaky -

Monday 3d, this Morning our Jolly boat landing some Gentlemen, got Closed in by the Ice. Sent the Launch to assist in getting her clear. the loose Ice setting in Shore hemmed in the Launch and

[Vol.4 - page 13]

1779

May Kamtschatka - in Awatscha Bay -

one of the Resolutions Boats. The people belonging to the three boats went to the Ostrog and were entertained by the Russians till the next Morning, when the Ice broke free and we got the boats off again.

Tuesday 4th. A Russian Merchant and a German, who was sent as an interpreter, arrived from Bolcheretzkoï and went on board the Resolution to wait on Captain Clerk. They made an excuse for the Major not having sent an Officer down, it being understood from Ishmiloffs letter that we were trading Ships. The Major had sent directions to the Serjeant to give what assistance to the Ships he was able, without receiving any thing in return - indeed the Russians of St. Peter and Paul were as much in need of assistance as able to supply our wants, many of them being very bad with the Scurvy, on which account our Surgeons visited them every day - they complain that in the Whole province of Kamtschatka there is not one Surgeon. They supplied us with fish and as much Game as they could spare. They had scarce any thing else we stood in need of except 3 or 4 head of Cattle that belonged to private persons. Bullocks are the only live Stock can be kept in Kamtschatka; Hogs, poultry &c. being always destroyed by the Dogs, who are too necessary an Animal to part with.

Friday 7th. Captain Gore, Lieut King, and Mr. Webber, who speaks German, Set out with some Russians for Bolcheretzkoï, they went to the head of the bay in the Ships Boats and from thence in Sledges.

Tuesday 11th. The Astronomer's Observatory was erected on Shore at [?] the Ostrog. The Ice having cleared away as far as the entrance of St. Peter and Paul Harbour, we unmoored and warped within $\frac{3}{4}$ of a mile of the Ostrog where we Moored again, the point of the Peninsula on which the Ostrog Stands bearing NNW.

[Vol.4 - page 14]

1779

May Kamtschatka - in Awatscha Bay.

Thursday 13th. The ground beginning to be clear of Snow, sent a party on shore to cut Wood. found nettle tops and Onions in every clear Spot. We likewise tapped the birch trees, which gave a good quantity of a

clear sweet juice; with this the Ships Companies allowance of Brandy was mixed every day. The Ice having in some places broke off from the Shore, caught with our Seane plenty of Salmon, Cod and flatfish.

Sunday 16th. Got a Small Bullock from the Ostrog, which was killed for the use of the Ships Companies.

Monday 17th. Alex'dr. Macintosh, Carpenters Mate on board the Resolution, departed this life of a flux.

Wednesday 19th. this Afternoon the Ice broke up and drifted out of the harbour of St. Peter and Paul.

Friday 21st. At 8 in the Evening, the Governor {Major Behm} with Captain Gore, &c. arrived at the Ostrog from Bolcheretzkoï -

Saturday 22d. The Governor was saluted with 13 Guns at going on board of the Resolution.

Friday 25th. This Evening both Ships saluted him with 13 Guns at his taking leave.

The next morning early, he set off for Bolcheretzkoï - he made a present to the Officers of both Ships of Tea and Sugar, and to the Ships Companies of Tobacco, which was shared out 3 lbs. to every man that used Tobacco and one pound to each of those that did not.

20 head of Cattle are now on the Road from Bolcheretzkoï for the use of the Ships. As the melting of the Snow is likely to detain them, Captain Clerke is at liberty to use the Cattle belonging to private people at St. Peter and Paul, which the Major will see replaced.

We are to be supplied with flower. Cordage or Ships Stores they have none. The Major ^{has} promised to send for those Articles from Ochotzk and have them ready for us in case we should call here again in returning

[Vol.4 - page -15]

1779

May Kamtschatka - in Awatscha Bay -

from the North.

An Order dated 1775 has been sent from the Empress to Kamtschatka, directing the Governor to Assist any European Ships belonging to her Allies, that might stop here: on which account, nothing except a receipt was taken for those things the Ships were supplied with. [?]

The Major had intelligence from the Tschuktschi, of two Ships being in these Seas - by their description it could only be known we were Strangers; the Russians having no larger vessels hereabouts than Galliots. We likewise found the Meaning of the Russian Note given us on the Coast of America, which was a receipt for Skins given as tribute. The discovery of this Note was unlucky for Ismiloff at Oonalaska, who is suspected of underhand dealing, as it was not known before at Kastschatka that any tribute was collected so far to the Eastward as where we got the Note.

May 28th. The Ships Companies were put to full allowance of bread, having been at 2/3ds. since the 30th of November 1776.

Biscuit and Flower now served alternately 1 lb. per day.

A much larger proportion of provisions remaining in our Ship than in the Resolution, She was supplied from us with 2 Hogsheads of Brandy and 7 Puncheons of Biscuit.

June

Thursday 3d. Received from the Shore for the use of the Ships 250 pouds of Flower equal to 8354 lbs. Averdupois of which we took only 428 lbs. and the Resolution the remainder, to make the proportion of provisions equal in both Ships.

Friday 4th. fired 21 Guns being the Anniversary of his Majesty's birth day -

Saturday 5th. Twenty head of Cattle arrived from Bolcherekzkoi for the Ships, part of which was killed for present expense, and the remainder Corned for Sea Service.

[Vol.4 - page 16]

1779

June Kamtschatka - in Awatscha Bay -

Mr. Baily's Observations make St.Peter and Paul in

53°.00½' No. Lat'd.

and 158.37 Et. Long'de. from Greenwich with differs very little from what it is laid down by the Russians.

The look out house point which is the Eastern point of the Entrance into the Bay of Awatscha is in 52°.51½' No. Lat'd.

and 158.41 Et. Long'de.

Var'tn. 6°.45' Et. -

The Ostrog of St.Peter and Paul stands on a low, narrow Slip of land behind which is the harbour. it consists of about 20 Balagans and 8 or 9 log houses. the Sides of these houses are stout timber piled horizontally, and the ends where they cross at the corners so cut as not to hinder them from laying close to each other. The houses have in general a Small outer room which serves for an entry and to keep lumber in, and a large inner room which occupies all the remaining Space: within this is an Oven for Cooking and for heating their Apartment which they do to an unwholesome degree almost to suffocation.

This and their eating scarce any vegetables may be the reason they are so much afflicted with the Scurvy.

In Behrings time there was a Church at the upper part of the harbour, and there is yet a Store house which he built and another house which serves occasionally for Barracks or Hospital. The Church is removed to the West Side of Awatacha Bay at a small Kamtschadale Village called Paratunka, where except the pastor and his family, none but Kamtschadales reside. The pastor is himself half Kamtschadale, and a very friendly sensible old Man.

There is in every Town a Chief of Kamtschadales, called a Toyon, who is chosen by themselves and confirmed by the Council at Bolcheretzkoï. His power is limited to the

[Vol.4 - page 17]

1779

June Kamtschatka in Awatscha Bay -

punishment of Small Crimes only, such as neglect of business, &c, He is accountable for the tribute which is a fox skin and in some parts, a Sable annually, from every Male above the Age of 18.

The Country is now very thinly inhabited. Great numbers were destroyed by the Small Pox which was communicated to them by a Vessel from [..?..] in the year 1768. This distemper spread like a plague through the Country, depopulating whole Towns. The year after, the Natives made an insurrection, in which Captain [Neiless ?] the then Governor was killed.

The [..?..] of this was a polander sent hither as an exile, who seized upon a Vessel belonging to some Merchants and escaped to China and from thence to Europe: by the Small pox and those Commotions, upwards of 20,000 Kamtschadales perished, [2000 ?]

of them Males who paid tribute. To quiet the disorders Major Behm was sent here, and is now on the point of returning to Petersburg, having already solicited and obtained leave.

He is much beloved and respected here particularly by the Kamtschadales, who speak of his departure as a Misfortune and as such dread the approaching time. Captain Smealoff, who is now in command, is to succeed him. The present tribute to the Crown from Kamtschatka is valued at not much more than 10,000 Rubles Yearly {about £2000}. In almost every little Cove round the Bay of Awatscha we saw the remains of Old Towns and Houses now desolate, but which bespeak the Country to have been formerly well peopled. At this time there is no Town or Village near Awatscha Bay except St.Peter and Paul, and Paratunka, in both of which cannot be reckoned two hundred Kamtschadales including those married to the Russians.

[Vol.4 - page 18]

1779

June Kamtschatka - in Awatscha Bay

The Fur trade in Kamtschatka is mostly carried on by a Company of Merchants instituted by the Empress; they are distinguished by wearing a gold Medal and their number is limited to 14. This Company have not an exclusive right, but only some peculiar privileges, which are not granted to other Merchants. This trade employs but few vessels and those Small ones. The furs are mostly collected amongst the Islands between Kamtschatka and America where are Russians Settlements. They have one Settlement to the East of the Island Oonalaska near the high Mountains. They likewise trade and receive tribute from the Northern Kerrileke Islands, with the Settlement they have scarce any communication; they are said to be inhabited by hairy people; two children, not long ago were brought to Kamtschatka, who had hair growing on all parts of their bodies; this fact was attested by Major Behm. Spangberg likewise mentions these people as inhabiting Urupe, one of the Ieso Islands.

The Merchants of Kamtschatka will give 15½ Rubles for a good Sea Beaver Skin. Considering the Taxes, expense of Carriage, Risks, &c. &c. besides profits to different Merchants, one may very well venture to credit to accounts told of their value being above 90 Rubles in China. Their trade to China is not direct; all goods are landed at a Russian Settlement called Ookoi which lies North of the River Amur; from whence they are sent partly by Rivers and partly by land Carriage.

The forces at the time in the province of Kamtschatka, which includes all the Country East of the Penghinska Sea {the whole being under one command} are about 700, part Russians part Cossacks.

[Vol.4 - page 19]

1779

June Kamtschatka - in Awatscha Bay

The Anadirskoi Ostrog is abandoned as being too remote. The Strongest Garrison the Russians have to the Northward is Indjiga, which lays West of the Penghinska Gulf and is within the district subject to the Commanding Officer at Ochatzk.

We get no intelligence or information concerning the Seas beyond Behrings Straits; none of the Russian Charts extended so far North but what were copied from Behring's.

[Vol.4 - page 20]

1779

June From Awatscha Bay to the Northward -

Saturday 12th. This Afternoon, got under Sail and Stood towards the Mouth of the Bay - at 7 Anchord again 4 miles below the Ostrog.

Sunday 13th. Kept in all day by baffling winds.

Monday 14th. in the Morning Weighd, but at 9 the Wind came right in from the Sea with a thick fog. Anchord about 2 miles within the look out house point; in 2 fathoms Mud - Boats on Shore all the afternoon gathering greens -

Tuesday 15th. this Morning the Awachinskoi Mountain, after burning very fiercely these 3 days past, broke out in a violent eruption, throwing out Such a quantity of Ashes as darkened the Air and several times covered our decks. This Mountain is the Eastermost of the two on the North Side of Awatscha Bay. The other is likewise now smoking.

Wednesday 16th. At daylight weighed with a light breeze Northerly, and Sailed out of the Bay - the remainder of this and the next day, Standing alongshore to the Eastward with light variable Winds.

Friday 18th. At 11 in the forenoon, the Eastermost of the Land in sight, which we suppose to be the Shupinskoi Noss, bore N15° Et. pr Compass 7 or 8 Leagues distant
Lat'de. then 52°..47' No.
Long'de. in 159..45 Et.
Var'tn. 7°..30' Et.

After 11 the Weather became foggy and the wind freshened from the SW - lost Sight of the Land. Steered towards the N Et.

Saturday 19th. Kept more to the Northward - foggy - no land in Sight nor Soundings.

Sunday 20th. At 2 in the Morning, being clearer weather, saw the Coast of Kamtschatka to the NWt. but foggy weather coming on again soon hid the Land. This must be somewhere near the Cronotskoi Noss.
At Noon Lat'd. in 54°..57' No,
Long'd. in 163..08 Et.
Var'tn. 8°..55' Et.

[Vol.4 - page 21]

1779
June from Kamtschatka towards Behrings Straits.

Monday 21st. Clear Weather. At 2 in the morning Saw Land to the NW.
At Noon the Kamtschatka Noss bore N71° Wt. about 7 Leagues distant. We make this Noss in 56°..01'No.
Lat'd. and 163°..18' Et. Longitude - which is more to the Eastward than laid down in the Russian Charts - the Land in sight all the Afternoon at 5 or 6 Leagues distance, high and uneven. Our Course between the North and NNE -

Tuesday 22d. At Noon the Land still in sight to the WSW at 12 or 14 Leagues distance.
Our Lat'de. in 57°..02' No.
Long'de. in 164.. 33 Et.
Var'tn. 10°..15' Et.
In the Afternoon Cloudy with variable Winds - lost sight of the Land.

23d. to the 27th. Winds between the South and SW with foggy Weather. Running to the NE without land Soundings or any remarkable occurrence.

the 27th. at Noon Lat'de. Obs'd. 59°..52' No. Long'de. in 175°..20' Et.
Wind WSW with fair Weather - hauled up to the NNW pr Compass to make the Land.

Monday 28th. At ¼ past 5 in the Morning, Saw the Land to the NW - at 9 were within 3 Leagues. Stood to the ENE along shore. from 9 to Noon had Soundings 26 to 30 fathoms coarse Sand and Shells. This is the Coast of Koreki.

At Noon the Land bore from S65° W to N13° Et. distance off Shore 4 or 5 Leagues.
An Opening which I take to be the River Katirka NWbW
Lat'de. Obs'd. 61°..58' No.
Long'de. in 175..35 Et.
Var'tn. 17½° Et.

In the Afternoon and Night running along the Coast to the eastward about 6 Leagues distant from the Shore. Got no Soundings with 40 fathoms of line.

Tuesday 29th. hazy Weather. Running to the Eastward along the Coast which from the thickness of the Weather was only seen at times - had Soundings at 56 fathoms 6 Leagues from the Land.

At Noon Lat'd. 62°..02' No.
Long'de. in 178..25 Et.
Var'tn. 18½ ° Et.
St Thadeus Noss bore {pr Compass} N 1°..30' Et. 6 or 7 Leagues distant.

[Vol.4 - page 22]

1779
June to the Northward through Behrings Straits -

29th. We make St. Thadeus Noss in 62°..20' No. Latitude and 178..39 Et. Longitude.
It is not laid down in Mullers Chart so far to the Eastward of Awatscha Bay as we find it by more that 3 degrees - the Latitude agrees very well.

All this part of the Coast is high and Mountainous.

Wednesday 30th. light Winds. Steering all day to the ENE without losing Sight of St. Thadeus Noss. in the Afternoon caught Cod, having bottom at 72 fathoms Mud, 16 leagues from the Shore -

July

Thursday 1st. At 4 this Morning St. Thadeus Noss bore $W\frac{1}{4}S$ pr Compass 20 Leagues distant. Soundings 60 fms. as we ran towards the ENE, found the depth decreasing though at the same time we distanced the land. At Noon no land in sight - foggy weather

Lat'd. in $62^{\circ}.08'$ No.

Long'de. in $181^{\circ}.12'$ Et.

Friday 2d. A Moderate breeze from the Southward with a thick fog - Running towards the ENE.

Saturday 3d. At Noon Lat'de. in $63^{\circ}.37'$ No

Long'de. in $186^{\circ}.38'$ Et.

Var'tn. $23^{\circ}.30'$ Et.

At 4 in the afternoon, Saw the Tschuktschi Coast to the NW; and at 6 saw land to the Eastward which we take to be the Island of St. Lawrence. At 11 ran by the NW part of the Island at 3 or 4 miles distance. After Midnight Steered more Northerly for Behrings Straits - had Soundings all Night from 20 to 23 fathoms.

Sunday 4th. Steering North pr Compass - thick foggy weather - no land in sight. Soundings 23 to 26 fathoms.

Monday 5th. Wind SSE. At Noon Lat'de. in $65^{\circ}.50'$ No.

Long'de. in $190^{\circ}.16'$ Et. Var'tn. $25^{\circ}.15'$ Et.

The Weather clear and hazy alternately. At Noon Saw the Islands in Behrings Straits. Ran between them and the Asia Coast.

Soundings 23 to 27 fathoms.

Tuesday 6th. At Noon Lat'd. $67^{\circ}.07''$ No. Long'de. $190^{\circ}.58'$ Et. Var'tn. $26^{\circ}.20'$ E.

No land in Sight - have been Set to the Northward by a Current these 3 last days.

Afternoon at $\frac{1}{2}$ past 1 fell in with loose Ice. The Resolution sent her boats after Sea horses but caught none. Stood on to the NNE. a continuation

[Vol.4 - page 23]

1779

July in the frozen Sea -

6th. of loose fields of Ice in sight to the Eastward till Midnight.

Soundings since Noon 26 fathoms Mud.

Wednesday 7th. At 6 in the Morning Saw Ice to the Eastward and beyond it the Coast of America about 10 Leagues dist't. bearing from NEbN to ENE. - the Weather becoming hazy, soon lost sight of the Land - from 6 to Noon ran 9 Leagues to the Northward along the edge of the Ice which appears to be fixed to the Shore, or one continued field.

Lat'de. at Noon $68^{\circ}.24'$ No.

Long'de. in $192^{\circ}.52'$ Et.

Var'tn. $28.40'$ Et.

depth 23 fathoms Mud -

All the Afternoon running towards the North and NNE. at 8 came on a thick fog, lost sight of the Ice. Sea Gulls and Sea parrots about us in great numbers - passed some drift Wood.

At Midnight saw the Ice again to the Eastward - depth 19 fath's. which according to the Soundings we had last year, is not above 6 or 7 Leagues from the Land.

Thursday 8th. Continuing our Course to the NNE. Ice in sight to the Eastward of us. In the Morning at 6 the Wind shifted to the NNE - Stood to the NW and lost sight of the Ice.

At Noon Lat'de. in 69°..29' No.

Long'de. in 192..55 Et.

Var'tn. 29°..50' Et.

In the Afternoon, at 2 Saw the Ice to the Northward - this does not appear fixed like the Ice we left this morning, but is a continuation of loose fields too close to attempt forcing a passage through and extending to the Northward beyond Sight of our horizon.

Steered to the Westward along the edge of the Ice - a great many Sea horses on it.

Friday 9th. At Noon Lat'd. 69..11 No. Long'de. in 188.. 13 Et.

In the Afternoon at ½ past 5 having ran near 40 Leagues along the edge of the Ice, without seeing an Opening or clear Sea to the Northward beyond it, Bore away to the SSE and lost sight of the Ice. depth 24 to 29 ^ (fathoms) these 2 last days. Soft Sticky mud.

Saw Whales, drift Wood and Sea birds.

Steered all Night to the SSE, Captain Clerke intending to run as far as the Serze Kamen, and return to the Northward again towards the end of

[Vol.4 - page 24]

1779

July The Icy Sea

the Month when we might expect to find the Sea Clearer of Ice.

Saturday 10th. in the forenoon fell in with large bodies of loose Ice - at Noon calm - the Resolutions boats after Sea horses -

Lat'd. in 68°..02' No.

Long'de. in 188.. 35 Et. Var'tn. 28° Et.

In the Afternoon a breeze from the Eastward. All Night turning to the SE to clear the Ice which extended from the Westward to the SE.

Sunday 11th. Not being able to weather the Ice and it appearing tolerably clear and open, attempted to run through under an easy sail that the Ships might not suffer by striking too hard against the large pieces. After Running 8 miles to the Southward amongst broken Ice, Saw the Ice to the SW, SE and NE one compact body. Tackd and Stood back again - at 1 Afternoon were clear out - kept on to the Northward.

Monday 12th. in the forenoon little Wind, much loose Ice about.

Caught 4 Sea horses - tried for fish without Success.

found a Current setting WBN ½ a Knot - depth 29 fathoms Mud.

At Noon Lat'de. in 68..38' No.

Long'de. in 187..53 Et.

In the Afternoon Wind Westerly - running to the Northward.

Tuesday 13th. Wind Easterly. At 5 Saw a large body of Ice to the Westward extending towards the North. Continued our Course in that direction along the edge of the Ice which is one continued field. At 8 seeing the Ice extend towards the East hauled Close on a Wind. At 9 being near and not able to weather the outer point in Sight, Tackd.

At Noon Lat'd. 69°..26' No.

Long'de. 187..51 Et. Var'tn. 28¼° E.

All the Afternoon turning to the Eastward along the Ice - passed some large pieces of drift wood.

[Vol.4 - page 25]

1779

July The Icy Sea

Wednesday 14th. little Wind and foggy - turning to the Eastward near the Main body of the Ice which was to the North of us.

A Noon Lat'd. 69°.35' No.

Long'de. 189..02 Et.

Thursday 15th. the Wind came round to the Westward - Ran to the East by the edge of the Ice which we kept on our larboard hand -

at Noon Lat'd Obs'd. 69°.36' No.

Long'd. in 190..30 Et.

All the afternoon and Night Coasting the Ice along - one continued body.

Friday 16th. Wind SW. in the morning Running to the NE close to the edge of the Ice - foggy Weather till 8 when the Wind freshning cleared away the fog and we found ourselves embayed; the Ice taking a sudden turn to the SE. one close body - hauled on a Wind to the SSE. A fresh Gale with Snow.

At Noon were out of sight of the Ice

Lat'd. in 69°.55' No.

Long'd. in 193..41 Et. Var'tn. 32° Et.

Soundings 25 fathoms mud.

Continued on a Wind to the SSE till ½ past 8 in the evening.

Shoed to 21 fathoms. All Night turning to the Westward.

Saturday 17th. in the Morning Wind NE. The Weather becoming Moderate, Bore away to the NE again.

at Noon Lat'd. 69..55 No.

Long'de. 194..46 Et.

in the Afternoon passed a good deal of small drift Wood.

Soundings between 21 and 19 fathoms brown Sand.

Sunday 18th. in the Morning Wind NE. Stood to the NNW. Saw Whales, Sea parrots and other Sea birds.

At ½ past 8 Saw the Ice again.

At Noon Lat'de. 70..28 No.

Long'de. in 195..50 Et.

At ½ past 1 were close to the main body of the Ice to the North of us, extending towards the East and West beyond our Sight. The Wind veering to the westward of North, ran to the Eastward along the edge of the Ice, Steering more Northerly or Southerly

[Vol.4 - page 26]

1779

July in the Icy Sea -

18th. Southerly as it trended. Large herds of Sea horses. At 9 in the evening a White Bear swam close to our Ship, and afterwards made for the Ice on which we saw 2 others. At 11 thick fog came on; Wind WSW - hauled to the Southward from the Ice - half an hour after Midnight being clear, Tackd and Stood for the Ice again.

Monday 19th Wind Variable. At 2 in the Morning found the Ice turned Short to the South; and after running 2 miles in that direction along the edge which we kept constantly on our larboard hand, it turned towards the SW in which line we coasted it all this day.

At Noon Lat'd. in 70°.16' No.

Long'de. in 196..41 Et.

Var'tn. 33° Et.

Soundings 17 fathoms. Our distance from the Coast of America we judge to be about 7 Leagues. The Weather fair; but hazy in the horizon prevents our seeing it.

Afternoon at 1 two White Bears swam from the Ice towards the Ships. Hoisted our boats out and sent in pursuit of them - killed and took both.

At 6 got a glimpse of the Land beyond the Ice to the SEt.

At Midnight Shoed to 15½ fathoms brown Sand - hazy towards the Land.

Tuesday 20th. The Ice turned more to the Westward, in following it, deepened our Water. At 6 in the morning foggy - lost sight of the Main body of the Ice - much loose Ice and small drift Wood about us. At 8 Clear. Saw the Main body of the Ice to the SE, and at 11 the Land beyond the Ice bearing SEBS 5 or 6 Leagues. At Noon Hazy, Wind East.

Lat'de. in 69°.38' No.

Long'de. in 195.00 Et.

In the Afternoon running to the Westward through loose Ice - lost sight of the continued body of the Ice, which seems to be as yet fixed to the

[Vol.4 - page 27]

1779

July the Icy Sea -

20th. American Shore. At 8 in the evening little Wind - tried and found a current setting to the ENE pr Compass nearly one Knot - Rippling in the Night and much small drift wood, which are signs of our being near the entrance of a River.

The large drift wood we have seen at different times in this Sea most probably has drifted hither from Norton Sound or from the Coast to the Southward of it. between Norton Sound and Sledge Island we found a constant Current setting to the Westward and NW towards Behrings Straits, and in Behrings Straits, the Current near both Shores set to the Northward.

Wednesday 21st. Running to the Westward. At 9 Saw the Coast of America to the SE 7 or 8 Leagues distant.

At Noon neither Land or Ice in Sight.

Lat'de. in 69°.48' No.

Long'de. in 193.40 Et.

depth 48 fathoms Mud.

in the Afternoon passed much loose Ice.

Thursday 22d. Wind Easterly - running to the Westward - all the Morning a clear Sea.

At Noon Lat'de. 69°.34' No.

Long'de. 188.48 Et.

in the Afternoon hazy. Saw Ice to the Westward - hauled on a Wind to the Southward to clear it. At ½ past 7 no Ice in sight - bore away to the Westward again. At 8 found ourselves amongst loose fields of Ice. Most part of the Night Standing to the SSE expecting to get clear of the Ice. The Weather foggy.

Friday 23d. A fresh breeze ESE. turning towards the SE to regain an open Sea; at 4 in the Morning were obliged to shorten Sail on account of the Ice being so thick about us that we could not avoid running against many large Clumps which tore off much of our Sheathing. Continued turning towards the SE under Topsails. At 11 when almost clear out, got entangled amongst

[Vol.4 - page 28]

1779

July in the Icy Sea -

23d. some large pieces which stopped the Ships way so much that She fell bodily to leeward. After having with poles pushed these pieces clear of us, we made 2 or 3 Short trips; but our run was so shortened on each tack by the Ice closing that instead of gaining Ground, we fell broadside foremost on the edge of a Small field - having almost an open Sea to Windward, the Surf made the Ship strike violently - the field at length breaking, we set all our Sails for another trial: but before the Ship gathered way enough to be under command, we again fell to leeward on some more.

As the Swell made it very dangerous and unsafe to lay to windward of all, and as there was no chance of getting clear, we pushed for a small opening into the Ice - as soon as we got within the first large piece, furled all our Sails and made fast with Ice hooks - having smooth Water.

At Noon Lat'de. 69°.20' No.

Long'de. in 187.17 Et.

The Resolution bore SEbE 3 miles distant 3 miles under Sail and seemingly clear of the Ice.

half an hour after noon lost Sight of her - found the Ship drift with the body of the Ice towards the NW at above half a Knot.

At 4 in the Afternoon the Ice was close all round and as far as could be seen except between the South and ESE - where at a distance of $\frac{3}{4}$ of a mile from us it still loose and open. At 5 the Wind veered round to the NE, and at 6 to the North, which made the Ice begin to seperate - took up our Ice hooks and made Sail towards the SEt. - the Ice slowly giving way as the Ship pressed against it. Heard a Gun from the Resolution which we answered. At $\frac{1}{2}$ past 7 were without the edge of the close Ice - heard the Resolutions Guns to the SE, by the sound of which we joined her half an hour before Midnight, being then in a clear Sea. The Weather foggy.

[Vol.4 - page 29]

1779

July from the Icy Sea - to the Southward.

Saturday 24th. Wind SSW - running towards the SE.

At 11 in the forenoon were Stopped by a large body of loose Ice to the Eastward from SSE to NNE.

At Noon Lat'd. in $68^{\circ}..54'$ No.

Long'de. in $188..17$ Et.

in the Afternoon falling Calm sent our Boats after Sea horses.

Caught Eleven, which served for lamp oil.

Sunday 25th. Wind SW. Seeing a clear Sea beyond the loose Ice to the SE, made Sail that way to force through. At 6 were clear past all. The remainder of the day running to the SE without seeing any more Ice.

At Noon Lat'd. $68^{\circ}..41'$ No.

Long'de. $189..25$ East.

26th and 27th. Standing backwards and forwards to clear bodies of loose Ice. Condemned our worst Foresail to repair other Sails. Have found a leak in our larboard Bow about 2 feet below the water line. Since getting amongst the Ice {the 23d.} have made a foot water every 4 hours - before only made 9 inches in two days.

27th at Noon Lat'd. $67^{\circ}..55'$ No.

Long'de. in $188..26$ E.

27th. In the Afternoon were surrounded by loose Ice - Wind SE. Standing to the SW.

At $\frac{1}{2}$ past 4 saw the Coast of Asia - a Bluff point bearing S36 Et. dist. about 15 Leagues.

between us and the land a body of close Ice. Stood towards the East.

After this finding our run to the Northward as well as our approaches to either Continent obstructed by the Sea being so full of Ice, it was judged fruitless to make any more attempts.

28th and 29th. turning towards the SE. in sight of the Coast of Asia.

Friday 30th. Wind NW. in the Night ran through Behrings Straits, keeping to the West of Midchannel Islands.

Saturday 31st. Steering to the Southward. The Coast of Asia in Sight all day.

Lat'd. at Noon $65^{\circ}..08'$ No.

Long'de. in $189..08$ Et.

Var'tn. $25^{\circ}..Et.$

[Vol.4 - page 30]

1779

August by the Island St. Lawrence -

Sunday 1st. Wind SW. - at Noon Saw land to the SSE which we supposed to be an Island to the Eastward of St. Lawrence.

Lat'd. Obs'd. $64^{\circ}..22'$ No.

Long'de. in $189..12$ Et.

Var'tn. $23..55$ Et.

All the Afternoon and Night, endeavouring to weather the Island - thick foggy Weather.

Monday 2d. in the Morning the fog cleared away - found we had fell to leeward.
At Noon being very clear, Saw the land bearing from S52° Wt. pr Compass to S72° Et. making in a number of high Clumps which appear like seperate Islands - our distance from the nearest 4 or 5 Leagues.

This Land we did not approach near enough to determine whether it is all one, or a Cluster of Islands close together - the Westermost part is what we passed July 3d. in the Night - the Eastermost part we ran close by in September last year and found to be a number of high Cliffs joined together by very low land, which makes it most probable that the whole is but one Island: its extent is from 62°.54' to 63°.49' No. Lat'de. and from 188° to 191½° Et Longitude.

Most part of the Afternoon Calm - in the evening a light breeze ENE. Steered to the Westward.

Tuesday 3d. Light Winds - running round the NW point of the Island Saint Lawrence.

Wednesday 4th. in the afternoon a fresh Gale at East - lost sight of the Land . Steered towards the SSW.

5th and 6th. Winds between the North and West with rainy Weather.

[Vol.4 - page 31]

1779

August To Kamtschatka - in St. Peter and Paul Harbour -

Saturday 7th. At Noon Lat'de. 59°.38' No.
Long'de. 183°.07 Et.
Var'tn. 17°.12' Et.
in the Afternoon little wind - Sounded 75 fathoms black Sand.
Caught Cod.

to the 17th. making the best of our way towards the SW, without any occurrence worth remarking.

Tuesday 17th. At ½ past 4 in the Morning Saw Land to the NW which we could not approach, the Wind being from that Quarter.
At Noon Lat'de. Obs'd. 53°.50' No.
Long'de. in 168°.06 Et.
Var'tn. 9°.30' Et.
the land in Sight NbW distance 10 or 12 Leagues -
this we take to be the Island Meadnoi laid down to the SEt. of Behring Island in the Charts of the Russians at Kamtschatka.

Saturday 21st. At daylight saw the Coast of Kamtschatka the Shupanoveskaya Mountain bearing NW½N pr Compass, 25 to 30 Leagues distant.
Our Lat'd. then 53°.41' No.
and Long'de. 161°.54 Et.
Var'tn. 7½° Et.

Sunday 23d. this Morning the Resolutions boat came on board to inform us of the death of Captain Clerke.
At Noon were off the Shupinskoi Noss
its Lat'de. 53°.08' No.
Long'de. 159°.56 Et.

Monday 23d. in the Evening Saw the lookout house of Awatscha Bay, on which a good light was shewn us after dark.
At Midnight anchor'd in the entrance of Awatscha Bay, in 11 fathoms.

Tuesday 24th. in the Morning Weigh'd and Stood towards the Ostrog.
In the Afternoon Anchor'd and Moor'd in the harbour of St. Peter and Paul.

The Country has now a most beautifull appearance - Kamtschatka in Summer and Kamtschatka in winter, one would Scarcely call the same place.

Major Behm, we hear, set off for Petersburgh soon after our departure {in June}. Capt'n. Smealoff is Commander in Chief of Kamtschatka.

The Ostrog of St. Peter and Paul is under the same Sergeant who commanded when we were here before.

[Transcribed by Jacqueline Lamprecht for the State Library of New South Wales]